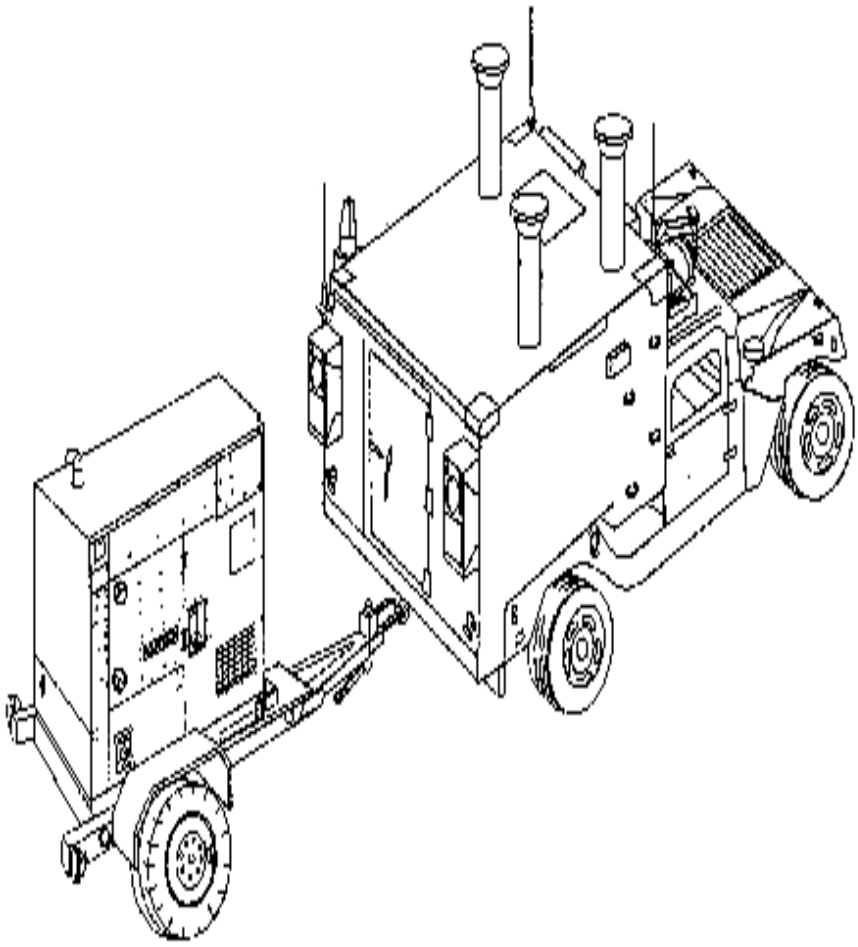
Headquarters, Department of the Army **ARTEP 3-477-10-MTP**



MISSION TRAINING PLAN
FOR THE
BIOLOGICAL INTEGRATED DETECTION SYSTEM (BIDS) PLATOON

*ARMY TRAINING AND
EVALUATION PROGRAM
No. 3-477-10-MTP

HEADQUARTERS
DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
Washington, DC, 14 March 2002

MISSION TRAINING PLAN

Mission Training Plan for the Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) Platoon

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PAGE

*This publication supersedes ARTEP 3-477-10-MTP, 2 April 1997.

PREFACE

This mission training plan (MTP) provides the Active Component (AC) and the Reserve Component (RC) training manager with a descriptive, mission-oriented training program to train the unit to perform its critical wartime operations. While general defense plan missions and deployment assignments impact on the priorities, the operations described here are the principal ones that chemical companies are expected to execute with a high level of proficiency. Unit leaders use their mission-essential task list (METL) to identify the collective tasks in this MTP that must be trained. Each unit is expected to train, as a minimum, to the standards of the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs) listed in this MTP. Standards for training may be made more difficult but may not be lowered. This document is in alignment with and part of the United States (US) Army's training and tactical doctrine.

This MTP identifies the missions and selected collective tasks that are considered critical for wartime operations. The target audience for this MTP is for the Chemical Company (Biological Detection) Platoon and Long-Range Biological Standoff Detection Team equipped with the BIDS and the LRBSDS. Chapter 4 of this MTP consists of three field training exercises (FTXs) and seven situational training exercises (STXs), which are supported by the collective tasks listed in Chapter 5. These tasks are considered critical for the successful completion of the unit's mission.

This MTP applies to the chemical units organized under the following table(s) of organization and equipment (TOE):

- 03477A000 - Chemical Company (Biological Detection)

The proponent of this publication is Headquarters (HQ) US Army Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC). Submit changes for improving this publication on Department of the Army (DA) Form 2028 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms) and forward it to Commandant, US Army Maneuver Support Center (MANSCEN), ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-C, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-8929.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

CHAPTER 1

Unit Training

1-1. General. This MTP provides the commander and leaders with guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit as well as information on what to train and includes descriptive training plans for a unit equipped with the BIDS and the LRBSDS. The specific details of the unit's training program will depend on the--

- Unit's METL.
- Chain-of-command training directives and guidance based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian consideration (METT-TC).
- Training priorities of the unit.
- Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. Supporting Material. This MTP describes a critical wartime mission-oriented training program, which is part of the next higher echelon's training program. This relationship is illustrated in Figure 1-1. The unit's training program consists of the following publications:

a. ARTEP 3-116-MTP, which describes the missions and tasks for the chemical brigade or battalion.

b. ARTEP 3-457-30-MTP, which describes the mission and tasks for the chemical company HQ.

c. ARTEP 3-207-10-MTP, which describes the mission and tasks for the nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) reconnaissance platoon.

d. Soldier's manuals for the appropriate military occupational specialty (MOS) and skill level.

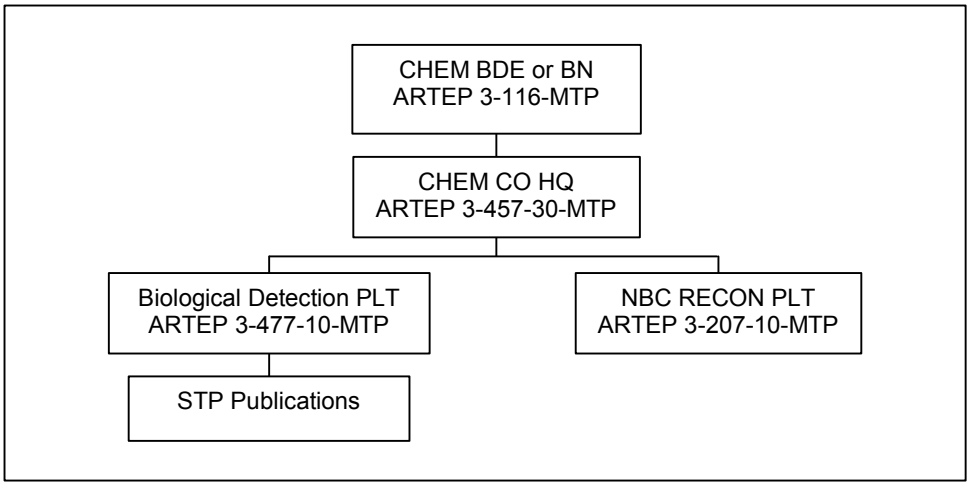


Figure 1-1. MTP Echelon Relationship

1-3. Contents. This MTP is organized into six chapters and four appendixes.

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides the explanation and organization of this MTP. This chapter explains how to use this MTP in establishing an effective training program.

b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, shows the relationships between missions, collective tasks, and individual tasks.

c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines/Training Plans, provides a graphic portrayal of the relationship between missions and their subordinate tasks. It is designed to determine training activities whose performance is needed to achieve critical wartime proficiency.

d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, consists of FTXs and supporting situational training exercises (STXs). They provide training information and a preconstructed scenario. Also, they can serve as a part of an internal or external evaluation. These exercises may be modified to suit the training needs of this unit.

e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, provides the training and evaluation criteria for all the tasks this unit must master to effectively perform its critical wartime mission. These training objectives serve as the lowest level of collective training performed by the unit. Each task is a T&EO that identifies tasks steps, performance measures, individual and leader tasks, and opposing forces (OPFOR) counter tasks. Each task is part of a mission, and in various combinations, composes training objectives of larger training exercises, such as those exercises in Chapter 4.

f. Chapter 6, External Evaluations, provides guidelines for the planning, preparation, and execution of an external evaluation of your unit.

g. Appendix A, Sample Evaluation Scenario, contains a sample scenario.

h. Appendix B, Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS), contains an explanation of the links between CATS and the Standard Army Training System (SATS) and how CATS can assist training managers with training in a combined-arms environment.

i. Appendix C, Threat Analysis, describes the local, regional, and global threat as well as special situations that impact operations.

j. Appendix D, Metric Conversion Chart, shows how to convert US and metric measurements.

1-4. Missions:

a. The missions for the Biological Detection Company, Biological Detection Platoon, and the LRBSDS Team is to conduct biological surveillance operations across the overall corps or joint task force area of operations and responsibility, to include the theater area of operations (such as joint and coalition areas). The mission of the Biological Detection Platoon and the LRBSDS Team supports force projection to the theater area of operations (deployment/redeployment), offensive, defensive, and rear area operations. This mission is conducted to provide rapid detection and identification of large area biological aerosol attacks. This mission encompasses--

(1) Warnings concerning biological detection hazards.

(2) Continuous monitoring for biological hazards.

(3) Conducting sampling operations, to include sample transfer/evacuation procedures.

(4) Conduct biological detection operations.

(5) Provide presumptive identification of biological hazards.

b. The mission is composed of major activities the unit as a whole must do to accomplish its mission. It is also composed of the tasks each soldier must do.

c. Each of these tasks requires training. Some tasks are trained individually or jointly. They must be oriented on the training criteria provided in the T&EO. Collective task T&EOs can link together through a logical, tactical scenario to form an STX. Although an STX is mission-oriented, it does not, by itself, result in training to mission proficiency. Use various combinations of STXs to develop an FTX for the unit to practice its missions. Consolidate several of the FTXs into an external evaluation that can be used to evaluate the unit's ability to perform multiple missions under stress and under realistic battlefield conditions.

d. The matrixes in Chapter 2 show the soldier's manual tasks that support collective task training. Determine those individual tasks that all members of the unit must master before collective training begins. Conduct leader task training through individual task training, training exercises (FTX and STX), and/or battle simulations. Individual tasks are mastered through preliminary soldier's manual task training.

1-5. Principles of Training. This MTP is based on the training principles in field manual (FM) 25-100.

a. Train as a Combined Arms and Service Team. Today's Army doctrine requires combined arms and services teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to execute combined arms and services operations without additional training or lengthy adjustment periods. Leaders must regularly practice cross attachment of the full wartime spectrum of combat, combat support, and combat service support units.

b. Train as You Fight. The goal of combat-level training is to achieve combat-level standards. Every effort must be made to attain this difficult goal. Within the confines of safety and common sense, leaders must be willing to accept less than perfect results initially and demand realism in training. They must integrate realistic conditions as smoke, noise, simulated NBC, battlefield debris, loss of key leaders, hot weather, and cold weather.

c. Use Appropriate Doctrine. Training must conform to Army doctrine. In units, new soldiers will have little time to learn nonstandard procedures. Therefore, units must train on peacetime training tasks to Army standards contained in mission training plans, drill books, soldier's manuals, regulations, and other training and doctrinal publications.

d. Use Performance-Oriented Training. Units become more proficient in the performance of critical tasks and missions by practicing the tasks and missions. Soldiers learn best by doing, using a hands-on approach. Leaders are responsible for developing and executing a training strategy that will provide these opportunities. All training assets and resources, to include simulators, simulations, and training devices must be included in the strategy.

e. Train to Challenge. Tough, realistic, intellectually, and physically challenging training both excites and motivates soldiers and leaders. It builds competence and confidence by developing and honing skills. Challenging training inspires excellence by fostering initiative, enthusiasm, and eagerness to learn.

f. Train to Sustain Proficiency. Once individuals and units have trained to a required level of proficiency, leaders must structure collective and individual training plans to repeat critical task training at the minimum frequency necessary for sustainment. MTPs and the Individual Training Evaluation Program (ITEP) are tools to help achieve and sustain collective and individual proficiency.

g. Train Using Multiechelon Techniques. To use available time and resources most effectively, commanders must simultaneously train individuals, leaders, and units at each echelon in the organization during the training event.

h. Train to Maintain. Maintenance is a vital part of every training program. Maintenance training designed to keep equipment in the fight is as important to soldiers as being expert in its use. Soldiers

and leaders are responsible for maintaining all assigned equipment in a high state of readiness in support of the training or combat equipment.

i. Make Commanders the Primary Trainers. The leaders in the chain of command are responsible for the training and performance of their soldiers and units. They are the primary training managers and trainers for their organizations.

1-6. Training Strategy. The training program developed and executed by a unit to train to standards in its critical wartime missions is a component of the Army's CATS. The purpose of CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify tools and critical resources that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training and training resources required to train to standard. See Appendix B for additional information on CATS.

1-7. Conducting Training. This MTP is designed to facilitate the planning, preparation, and conduct of unit training as explained in FM 25-series. The corps chemical officer--

a. Recommends the missions for the biological detection unit to train, based on the corps' intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) prioritized mission list. A key task for the training period is to conduct biological surveillance operations and plan the training to support the commander's intent and specific training guidance.

b. Reviews the mission outlines in Chapter 3 to determine what STXs need to be trained to meet the commander's intent and training guidance. Then reviews the matrixes in Chapter 2. These matrixes give you a list of collective, leader, and individual soldier's manual (SM) tasks the unit must master to perform the mission.

c. Identifies the tasks that need training. There will never be time to train everything. You must orient on the greatest challenges and the most difficult sustainment skills. Determine tasks that need training by having a training meeting with key officers and noncommissioned officers (NCOs).

d. Determines, along with the commander and key NCOs, exactly which STXs and individual tasks really need training and those the unit can already perform.

e. Determines the types of training aids/equipment needed to conduct the training, such as ammunition, maps, suitable training area, and the unit's organic equipment. Coordinate before training to ensure that the training aids/equipment is available.

f. Keeps subordinate leaders informed and oversees the conducting of the training. Require rigid enforcement of all standards to ensure unit subsequent training does not suffer.

g. Conducts leader training in preparation for each STX. This requires at least two training sessions. In the first session, discuss the key training points for the STX. Leaders explain their roles in the STX. In the second session the unit soldiers perform the STX.

1-8. Force Protection (safety). Training safety is an integral function in conducting all training. It measures leader competence and ability to protect the warfighting power of the US from accidental loss. It could be a decisive factor in winning on the battlefield. Safe, effective, realistic training is tough, demanding training conducted to standard with predictable results. To achieve this, units must address the conduct of safe realistic training at three different, but integrated tiers or levels.

a. Tier I. (command level): This tier is commander’s business. Commanders must acknowledge accepting responsibility for safety. They need to plan for safety integration, validate unit training and evaluation, plan for safety, and set the standard for safety. Commanders ensure the training conducted is consistent with the abilities of his soldiers.

b. Tier II. (leader level): At this level, the first line leaders enforce safety. They focus on adherence to training standards and accident prevention measures. They must establish a training safety over-watch to eliminate and control health and safety hazards. First line leaders must accept responsibility at this level.

c. Tier III. (individual level): At the individual level, every soldier is responsible for training safety. Soldiers need to understand and know training safety and first aid responsibilities. They must recognize unsafe acts and, if necessary, stop the unsafe act.

d. Risk management is an integral part of planning and executing training. It is a process for adding safety into all training. Units must train to wartime standards. Leaders and soldiers trained to perform under realistic and stressful conditions are best prepared to survive and win in combat. Unit training conditions and standards need to replicate combat conditions as closely as possible.

e. Safety is a critical planning factor for preplanned product improvement (P^3I) BIDS operations. Figure 1-2 summarizes the safety requirements and identifies potential safety hazards.

P^3I BIDS SAFETY HAZARDS		
HAZARD	**IMPACT**	**MITIGATION**
		ULTRA VIOLET AERODYNAMIC PARTICLE SIZER
LASERS	Possible skin injury Possible serious eye injury	Do not try any operation or maintenance procedure not specified in training manual (TM) 3-6665-350-12&P. Lasers are covered with protective shields; do not remove these shields. Observe all laser labels on the equipment.
FLOW NOZZLE	Agents of Biological Origin (ABOs) release into the shelter.	Do not clean the flow nozzle if there has been an exposure to ABOs. Dispose of the flow nozzle in the liquid biological hazardous (biohazardous) waste materials container. Replace with a new flow nozzle.
		MINIATURE FLOW CYTOMETER
LASERS	Possible skin injury Possible serious eye injury	Do not try any operation or maintenance procedure not specified in TM 3-6665-350-12&P. Lasers are covered with protective shields; do not remove shields. Observe all warning labels on the equipment.
SAMPLE INJECTION NEEDLE/ WASTE CONTAINER/ ASSOCIATED TUBING	Possible skin injury	Avoid skin contact. Dispose of per the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).
SHEATH/ WASTE AND ANTIFREEZE	Eye, prolonged skin, and ingestion hazard if ABO present Antifreeze presents an additional potential chemical hazard for ingestion and skin and eye contact	Wear surgical gloves, a surgical mask, and eye protection splash goggles when testing samples. Try to avoid spills; if spills occur, clean up immediately using sodium hypochlorite. Immediately flush skin and eyes thoroughly with distilled water. Seek medical attention. Avoid skin contact with waste material and dispose of it in approved biohazardous containers.
		BIOLOGICAL DETECTOR
LIQUID SAMPLE	Eye, prolonged skin, and ingestion hazard if ABO are present	Do not lower or remove the sample tube from the sample tube carrier until the sample has drained back into the sample tube. The display shows REMOVE SAMPLE when the assay is complete. Treat the tape cassette, assay reservoir, and clean-down reservoir as contaminated equipment.

Figure 1-2. P3I BIDS Safety Hazards

ASSAY AND CLEAN-DOWN RESERVOIR AND *TAPE CASSETTE	Skin and eye allergic reaction, nausea, and other harmful effects ***Same as liquid sample hazard**	Wear surgical gloves, a surgical mask, and splash protective eye goggles when handling these chemicals or the tape cassette (when the tape cassette has been exposed to ABOs). Dispose of used reservoirs and tape cassettes according to the SOP.
VIAL CAPS	Possible skin cuts and surgical glove tears	Be careful of sharp edges when removing crimped caps from vials and from the buffer solution port. If the plastic tab breaks without removing the metal crimp, use long-nose pliers or a screwdriver from the on-board tool kit to assist removal.
		CHEMICAL BIOLOGICAL MASS SPECTROMETER
PYROLIZER TUBE AND TRANSFER LINE	Possible severe burns from high temperatures	Take appropriate precautions when working around the easily accessible components of the transfer line and the pyrolizer tube. Keep sleeves rolled completely down. Handle a hot pyrolizer tube and transfer line with heat protective gloves. Use appropriate first aid procedures to treat minor burns.
CALIBRATION GAS CARTRIDGE	Skin contact with organic chemicals	Wear protective gloves when handling the calibration gas cartridge in case of unexpected leakage. Wash exposed skin with soap and water.
		COMMON COMPONENT HAZARDS
ELECTRICAL SAFETY	Electrical shock hazard	Do not try any operation or maintenance procedure not specified in TM 3-6665-350-12&P. Conduct electrical safety checks before turning equipment on.
LIQUID SAMPLE	Eye, prolonged skin, and ingestion hazard if ABOs are present	Wear surgical gloves, a surgical mask, and eye protection splash goggles when testing samples. Try to avoid spills; if spills occur, clean them up immediately using sodium hypochlorite. Avoid skin contact with waste material and dispose of it per the unit SOP.
BLEACH	Eye and prolonged skin hazard	Try to avoid spills; if spills occur, clean them up immediately with disposable paper towels. Immediately flush skin and eyes thoroughly with distilled water. Seek medical attention. Avoid skin contact with waste material and dispose of it per the unit SOP.
PERSONAL INJURY	Sprains; back and extremity injury	Use a two-person lift for installation and removal of components. Follow precautions during seat adjustments. Keep fingers and feet clear of moving metal parts.
COMPRESSED GAS	Possible skin injury caused by frostbite or freezing burns	Only use in ventilated area. Ensure that the air conditioner (AC) is on when used inside the BIDS shelter. Avoid skin contact with the liquid contained in the can. Can contents are under pressure; avoid puncturing the can.
INTERNAL CONCENTRATION	ABOs release into the shelter	Lock Internal Concentrator Assembly into place before cleaning. Use surgical gloves, a surgical mask, and splash protective eye goggles when cleaning. Dispose of cleaning material in approved biohazardous waste containers.
CARBON MONOXIDE	Serious health hazard or death	Do not close the door if collective protective equipment is not working and the AC vent is closed. If the vehicle is running, leave the door open and remain alert.

Figure 1-2. P3I BIDS Safety Hazards (continued)

1-9. Environmental Protection. Protection of natural resources has continued to become an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease, and if possible, eliminate, damage to the environment when conducting training. Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management, and is based on the same philosophy. Environmental risk management consists of the following steps.

a. Identify hazards. Identify potential sources for environmental degradation during analysis of METT-TC factors. This requires identification of environmental hazards. An environmental hazard is a condition with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural and historical artifacts.

b. Assess the hazard. Analyze the potential severity of environmental degradation using the environmental risk assessment matrix (Figure 1-3). The severity of environmental degradation is considered when determining the potential effect an operation will have on the environment. The risk impact value is defined as an indicator of the severity of environmental degradation. Quantify the risk to the environment resulting from the operation as extremely high, high, medium, or low, using the environmental risk assessment matrix.

c. Make environmental risk decisions. Make decisions and develop measures to reduce high environmental risks.

d. Brief chain of command. Brief chain of command (to include installation environmental office, if applicable) on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental matrixes. Risk decisions are made at a level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

e. Implement controls. Implement environmental protection measures by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training performance standards, and rehearsals.

f. Supervise. Supervise and enforce environmental protection standards.

1-10. Evaluation. T&EOs in Chapter 5 list the standards that the unit must meet for each task.

a. Evaluations are either internal or external. Conduct internal evaluations at all levels and ensure they are implemented in all training. The next higher HQ normally conducts the more formal external evaluations.

b. A critical weakness in training is the failure to evaluate each task every time it is executed. The Army Training and Evaluation Program (ARTEP) concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Every training exercise provides the potential for evaluation feedback. Every evaluation is a training session. Leaders frequently do not evaluate continuously. To optimize training, commanders must ensure trainers and other unit leaders continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Emphasize direct on-the-spot evaluations during training. Correcting poor performance during individual training or during drills is easy to do. In higher-level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators but should not be totally eliminated. The habit of leader evaluation at every level makes the difference. Plan after-action reviews (AARs) at frequent, logical intervals during exercises (usually after the completion of a major event). This is a proven technique, which allows you to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. This gets all soldiers involved and prevents the reinforcement of bad habits. This on-the-spot evaluation does not allow soldiers to repeat poor performance without corrections being applied.

d. FM 25-101 provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR. It also provides detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

Environmental Area:					Rating:	
Unit Operations	**Risk Impact**					
Movement of heavy vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Movement of personnel and light vehicles/systems	5	4	3	2	1	0
Assembly area activities	5	4	3	2	1	0
Field maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0
Garrison maintenance of equipment	5	4	3	2	1	0
Environmental Risk Assessment Work Sheet						

Unit Operation Environmental Issues	Movement of Heavy Vehicles/ Systems	Movement of Personnel and Light Vehicles/ Systems	Assembly Area Activities	Field Maintenance of Equipment	Garrison Maintenance of Equipment	Risk Rating
Air pollution						
Archeological and historical sites						
Hazardous materiel/waste						
Noise pollution						
Threatened/endangered species						
Water pollution						
Wetland protection						
Overall rating						
Overall Environmental Risk Assessment Form						

Category	Range	Environmental Damage	Decision Maker
Low	0-58	Little or none	Appropriate level
Medium	59-117	Minor	Appropriate level
High	118-149	Significant	Division commander
Extremely High	150-175	Severe	MACOM commander
Risk Categories			

Figure 1-3. Environmental Risk Assessment Matrix

1-11. Feedback. Your recommendations for improvement of this ARTEP MTP are requested. Your feedback will help to ensure that this document answers the training needs of units in the field. We have provided a questionnaire at the end of this MTP to make it easier to send recommendations. Please send your comments to the address in the preface.

CHAPTER 2

Training Matrixes

2-1. General. The training matrix assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel. The mission identification table listed below (Figure 2-1) provides mission titles for the unit.

2-2. Mission to Collective Tasks Matrix. This matrix (Figure 2-2) identifies the missions and their supporting collective tasks. The tasks are listed under the appropriate BOS which are indicated by an **X** in the matrix. The BOS used in this matrix are defined in TRADOC Pam 11-9. A specific mission is trained by identifying collective tasks in the vertical column for the mission. Based on the proficiency of the unit, training is focused on operational weaknesses.

The mission identification table listed below (Figure 2-1) provides mission identification for the unit.

Mission Identification Table
Mission Title
• CONDUCT BIOLOGICAL SURVEILLANCE OPERATIONS ACROSS THE OVERALL CORPS OR JOINT TASK FORCE AREA OF OPERATIONS AND RESPONSIBILITY, TO INCLUDE THE THEATER
• CONDUCT LRBSDS BIOLOGICAL DETECTION OPERATIONS • DOCUMENT BIOLOGICAL BACKGROUND DATA • EVACUATE A BIOLOGICAL SAMPLE • OCCUPY/DISPLACE FROM A BIOSURVEILLANCE SITE • PROVIDE BIOLOGICAL SURVEILLANCE/DETECTION • RESPOND TO A BIOSURVEILLANCE ALERT

Figure 2-1. Mission Identification Table

Collective Tasks	CONDUCT BIO. SURVEILLANCE	CONDUCT LRBSDS BIO. DETECTION	DOCUMENT BIOLOGICAL BACKGROUND	EVACUATE A BIOLOGICAL SAMPLE
Develop Intelligence				
34-6-2010.03-0203 Maintain the Current Enemy Situation (Company/Platoon)	**X**	**X**		**X**
19-3-3105.03-1013 Process Captured Documents and Equipment	**X**			
71-3-C232.03-1019 Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver				
07-3-C211.03-1001 Move Tactically	**X**			
Protect the Force				
03-3-0022 Conduct P3I Biological Detection Operations	**X**			

Collective Tasks		CONDUCT BIO. SURVEILLANCE	CONDUCT LRBSDS BIO. DETECTION	DOCUMENT BIOLOGICAL BACKGROUND	EVACUATE A BIOLOGICAL SAMPLE
03-3-0038	Conduct Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) Data Analysis	X	X		
03-3-7004	Conduct A Hand-Held Assay (HHA) (M31-BIDS)	X			
03-3-7005	Conduct Biological Detection Operations (M31-Biological Integrated Detection System [BIDS])	X			
03-3-C209	React to Smoke Operations	X			
03-3-C201	Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions	X	X		
03-3-C202	Prepare for a Chemical Attack	X	X		
03-3-C203	Respond to a Chemical Attack	X	X		
03-3-C205	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike	X	X		
03-3-C206	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack	X	X		
03-3-C208	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	X	X		
03-3-C222	Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X		
03-3-C223	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X	X		
03-3-C224	Conduct Operational Decontamination	X	X		
03-3-C226	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	X	X		
03-4-0018	Prepare for a Biological Attack	X	X		
03-4-0019	Respond to a Biological Attack	X	X		
03-5-0001	Conduct Long-Range Biological Detection System (LRBSDS) Preflight Operations	X	X		
03-5-0002	Conduct Long-Range Biological Detection System (LRBSDS) Biological Detection	X	X		
05-3-0210.03-1001	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X			
07-3-C212.03-1002	Defend the Unit's Position	X			
07-3-C228.03-1005	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X			

Collective Tasks		CONDUCT BIO. SURVEILLANCE	CONDUCT LRBSDS BIO. DETECTION	DOCUMENT BIOLOGICAL BACKGROUND	EVACUATE A BIOLOGICAL SAMPLE
03-3-0016	Employ Physical Security Measures	X	X	X	X
03-3-0018	Plan the Employment of a Biological Detection (BD) Platoon	X	X	X	X
03-3-0019	Identify Biological Surveillance Sites	X			
03-3-0020	Conduct a Critical Node Array Surveillance for Biological Hazards	X		X	X
03-3-0021	Conduct an Area Array Surveillance for Biological Hazards	X		X	X
03-3-0023	Conduct Biological Detection Operations (Respond to Aerodynamic Particle Sizer [APS] Alert)	X		X	X
03-3-0024	Conduct Alternate Biological Detection Operations (When Flow Cytometer [FCM] and/or Microluminometer is Nonmission Capable [NMC])	X			
03-3-0025	Conduct Alternate Biological Sample Collection Operations (When Biological Sampler is Nonmission Capable [NMC])	X			
03-3-0026	Conduct Alternate Biological Sample Collection Operations (When Liquid Sampler is Nonmission Capable [NMC])	X			
03-3-0027	Conduct Continuous Monitoring Operations (When Aerodynamic Particle Sizer [APS] is Nonmission Capable [NMC])	X			
03-3-0028	Prepare a Biological Sample for Evacuation	X			X
03-3-0029	Evacuate Biological Samples to the Designated Sample Transfer Point	X			X
03-3-0031	Set Up the Biological Surveillance Site	X			
03-3-0032	Displace the Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS)	X			
44-1-C220.03-1017	Use Passive Air Defense Measures	X	X		

Collective Tasks	CONDUCT BIO. SURVEILLANCE	CONDUCT LRBSDS BIO. DETECTION	DOCUMENT BIOLOGICAL BACKGROUND	EVACUATE A BIOLOGICAL SAMPLE
44-1-C221.03-1018 Take Active Combined-Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	X	X		
Perform CSS and Sustainment				
03-2-7002 Conduct Contractor Logistics Support (CLS) for the M31/M31A1 Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) and the M94 Long-Range Biological Standoff Detection System	X			
08-2-0003.03-00CT Treat Casualties		X		
19-3-3106.03-1014 Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)	X	X		
43-2-C322.03-1016 Perform Unit-Level Maintenance	X			
Exercise Command and Control				
11-2-C302.03-1010 Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X			
12-3-C216.03-1216 Maintain Platoon Strength	X	X		
03-3-0008 Issue an Operation Order (OPORD)	X	X	X	X
03-3-0009 Prepare for Operations	X	X	X	X
03-3-0010 Establish and Operate the Harris High Frequency (HF) Radio Set	X	X	X	X
03-3-0013 Establish Wire Communications	X		X	X
03-3-0030 Coordinate with Unit Commander or Higher Headquarters (HQ) for Unit Employment	X	X	X	X

Collective Tasks	OCCUPY/ DISPLACE FROM BIOSURV	PROVIDE BIO. SURVEILLANCE	RESPOND TO A BIOSURV. ALERT
Develop Intelligence			
34-6-2010.03-0203 Maintain the Current Enemy Situation (Company/Platoon)	X	X	X
19-3-3105.03-1013 Process Captured Documents and Equipment	X		
71-3-C232.03-1019 Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X		X
Deploy/Conduct Maneuver			
07-3-C211.03-1001 Move Tactically	X		
Protect the Force			
03-3-0022 Conduct P3I Biological Detection Operations		X	X
03-3-0038 Conduct Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) Data Analysis		X	X
03-3-7004 Conduct A Hand-Held Assay (HHA) (M31-BIDS)		X	X
03-3-7005 Conduct Biological Detection Operations (M31-Biological Integrated Detection System [BIDS])			
03-3-C209 React to Smoke Operations		X	X
03-3-C201 Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions	X	X	
03-3-C202 Prepare for a Chemical Attack		X	
03-3-C203 Respond to a Chemical Attack		X	
03-3-C205 Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike		X	
03-3-C206 Prepare for a Nuclear Attack		X	
03-3-C208 Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area		X	
03-3-C222 Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack		X	
03-3-C223 Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack		X	
03-3-C224 Conduct Operational Decontamination		X	
03-3-C226 Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area		X	

Collective Tasks		OCCUPY/ DISPLACE FROM BIOSURV	PROVIDE BIO. SURVEILLANCE	RESPOND TO A BIOSURV. ALERT
03-4-0018	Prepare for a Biological Attack		X	
03-4-0019	Respond to a Biological Attack		X	
03-5-0001	Conduct Long-Range Biological Detection System (LRBSDS) Preflight Operations		X	
03-5-0002	Conduct Long-Range Biological Detection System (LRBSDS) Biological Detection		X	X
05-3-0210.03-1001	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	X	X	
07-3-C212.03-1002	Defend the Unit's Position	X		X
07-3-C228.03-1005	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X		X
03-3-0016	Employ Physical Security Measures	X	X	X
03-3-0018	Plan the Employment of a Biological Detection (BD) Platoon	X	X	X
03-3-0019	Identify Biological Surveillance Sites	X	X	
03-3-0020	Conduct a Critical Node Array Surveillance for Biological Hazards	X	X	X
03-3-0021	Conduct an Area Array Surveillance for Biological Hazards	X	X	X
03-3-0023	Conduct Biological Detection Operations (Respond to Aerodynamic Particle Sizer [APS] Alert)		X	X
03-3-0024	Conduct Alternate Biological Detection Operations (When Flow Cytometer [FCM] and/or Microluminometer is Nonmission Capable [NMC])		X	X
03-3-0025	Conduct Alternate Biological Sample Collection Operations (When Biological Sampler is Nonmission Capable [NMC])		X	X
03-3-0026	Conduct Alternate Biological Sample Collection Operations (When Liquid Sampler is Nonmission Capable [NMC])		X	X

Collective Tasks	OCCUPY/ DISPLACE FROM BIOSURV	PROVIDE BIO. SURVEILLANCE	RESPOND TO A BIOSURV. ALERT
03-3-0027 Conduct Continuous Monitoring Operations (When Aerodynamic Particle Sizer [APS] is Nonmission Capable [NMC])		X	X
03-3-0028 Prepare a Biological Sample for Evacuation		X	X
03-3-0029 Evacuate Biological Samples to the Designated Sample Transfer Point		X	X
03-3-0031 Set Up the Biological Surveillance Site	X		
03-3-0032 Displace the Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS)	X		
44-1-C220.03-1017 Use Passive Air Defense Measures	X		
44-1-C221.03-1018 Take Active Combined-Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	X		
Perform CSS and Sustainment			
03-2-7002 Conduct Contractor Logistics Support (CLS) for the M31/M31A1 Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) and the M94 Long-Range Biological Standoff Detection System	X	X	X
08-2-0003.03-00CT Treat Casualties	X		X
19-3-3106.03-1014 Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)		X	
43-2-C322.03-1016 Perform Unit-Level Maintenance	X	X	
Exercise Command and Control			
11-2-C302.03-1010 Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X	X
12-3-C216.03-1216 Maintain Platoon Strength	X	X	
03-3-0008 Issue an Operation Order (OPORD)	X	X	X
03-3-0009 Prepare for Operations	X	X	X
03-3-0010 Establish and Operate the Harris High Frequency (HF) Radio Set	X	X	X
03-3-0013 Establish Wire Communications	X	X	X

Collective Tasks		OCCUPY/ DISPLACE FROM BIOSURV	PROVIDE BIO. SURVEILLANCE	RESPOND TO A BIOSURV. ALERT
03-3-0030	Coordinate with Unit Commander or Higher Headquarters (HQ) for Unit Employment	X	X	X

Figure 2-2. Collective Task to Missions

CHAPTER 3

Mission Outlines / Training Plans

3-1. General. Mission outlines are designed to assist commanders in preparing training plans for wartime missions. The mission outlines illustrate the relationship between the missions and their supporting tasks. FMs 25-100 and 25-101 provide detailed information on training management. They should be used with this MTP to develop training plans.

3-2. Mission Outlines. Since unit training is mission-oriented, the mission outline shows how lower-level task training contributes to the ability of the unit to perform its critical wartime mission. Table 3-1 lists sample missions contained in this MTP. Together with the training matrixes listed below, this outline provides the commander with a visual outline of his unit's mission in a format that facilitates the planning and management of training. These exercises are fully defined in Chapter 4.

Table 3-1. Sample Mission Outline

Exercise	Title
FTX 1	Conduct Biological Surveillance (Biosurveillance) in Entry/Lodgment Operations
FTX 2	Maintain Theater Biological Surveillance (Biosurveillance)
FTX 3	Conduct Biosurveillance During Peacekeeping Operations
STX A	Conduct a Tactical Road March
STX B	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) and Defend a Unit Perimeter
STX C	Deploy/Redeploy from a Theater of Operations
STX D	Respond to a Biosurveillance Alert
STX E	Occupy/Displace from a Biosurveillance Site
STX F	Evacuate a Biological Sample
STX G	Document Biological Background Data

3-3. Training Matrix. Training matrixes help in the planning of training. They show the relationship between the collective tasks through the STXs and FTXs. The collective tasks are incorporated into the FTX and cross-walked into the STXs.

a. Table 3-2 identifies the STXs that support the FTXs in this MTP.

Table 3-2. STX-to-FTX Matrix

FTX	Mission Outline	STX						
		A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	Conduct Biological Surveillance (Biosurveillance) in Entry/Lodgment Operations	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
2	Maintain Theater Biosurveillance	X	X	X		X	X	X
3	Conduct Biosurveillance During Peacekeeping Operations	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

b. Table 3-3 identifies the collective tasks that unit personnel must perform to standard to be proficient in the STX. Use this matrix to plan individual and collective training to support unit training. To use this matrix, choose the STX you wish to train and look down the column to find the supporting collective tasks. Determine which of the collective tasks you wish to concentrate on based on your unit's proficiency. Collective tasks that do not specifically support the STX but are important tasks in commanding, controlling, and supporting all Army units are checked in this matrix to illustrate their indirect relation to BIDS missions.

Table 3-3. Collective-Task-to-STX Training Matrix

Task No.	Task Title	STX						
		A	B	C	D	E	F	G
03-3-7005	Conduct Biological Detection Operations (M31-BIDS)				X	X	X	X
34-6-2010.03-0203	Maintain the Current Enemy Situation (Company/Platoon)	X	X	X	X	X	X	
19-3-3105.03-1013	Process Captured Documents and Equipment		X			X	X	
71-3-C232.03-1019	Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
07-3-C211.03-1001	Move Tactically	X	X	X		X	X	
03-3-0022	Conduct P3I Biological Detection Operations				X	X	X	X
03-3-0038	Conduct BIDS Data Analysis				X	X	X	X
03-3-7004	Conduct Handheld Assay (HHA) (M31-BIDS)				X	X	X	X
03-3-C209	React to Smoke Operations	X	X			X		
03-3-C201	Prepare for Operations Under NBC Conditions		X	X	X	X	X	X
03-3-C202	Prepare for a Chemical Attack		X	X	X	X	X	X
03-3-C203	Respond to a Chemical Attack		X	X	X	X	X	X
03-3-C205	Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike			X	X	X	X	X
03-3-C206	Prepare for a Nuclear Attack			X	X	X	X	X
03-3-C208	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	X				X	X	
03-3-C222	Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack	X				X	X	
03-3-C223	Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack							
03-3-C224	Conduct Operational Decontamination	X			X	X	X	
03-3-C226	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area	X				X	X	
03-4-0018	Prepare for a Biological Attack	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
1003-4-0019	Respond to a Biological Attack	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
03-5-0001	Conduct LRBSDS Preflight Operations			X	X			
03-5-0002	Conduct LRBSDS Biological Detection		X	X	X	X	X	X
03-5-0003	Conduct LRBSDS Post Detection Operations	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
05-3-0210.03-1001	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment		X	X		X		
07-3-C212.03-1002	Defend a Unit Position		X			X		
07-3-C228.03-1005	Occupy an Assembly Area (AA)	X	X			X		
03-3-0016	Employ Physical Security Measures	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
03-3-0018	Plan the Employment of a Biological Detection Platoon	X	X	X		X	X	
03-3-0019	Identify Biological Surveillance Sites		X		X	X	X	
03-3-0020	Conduct Critical Node Array Surveillance for Biological Hazards	X	X			X	X	
03-3-0021	Conduct Area Array Surveillance for Biological Hazards	X	X			X	X	
03-3-0023	Conduct Biological Detection Operations (Respond to APS Alert)				X	X	X	X
03-3-0024	Conduct Alternate Biological Detection Operations When the Flow Cytometer and/or the Microluminometer is Nonmission Capable				X	X	X	X
03-3-0025	Conduct Alternate Biological Sample Collection Operations When the Biological Sampler is Nonmission Capable				X	X	X	X
03-3-0026	Conduct Alternate Biological Sample Collection Operations When the Liquid Sampler is Nonmission Capable				X	X	X	X
03-3-0027	Conduct Continuous Monitoring Operations When the Aerodynamic Particle Sizer is Nonmission Capable				X	X	X	X
03-3-0028	Prepare a Biological Sample for Evacuation						X	X
03-3-0029	Evacuate Biological Samples to the Designated Sample Transfer Point						X	X
03-3-0031	Set Up the Biological Surveillance Site		X		X	X	X	X
03-3-0032	Displace the BIDS	X	X	X		X		
44-1-C220.03-1017	Use Passive Air Defense Measures	X	X			X	X	

Table 3-3. Collective-Task-to-STX Training Matrix

Task No.	Task Title	STX						
		A	B	C	D	E	F	G
44-1-C221.03-1018	Take Active Combined-Arms Air Defense (AD) Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms	X	X			X		
03-2-7002	Conduct Contractor Logistics Support (CLS) for the M31/M31A1 Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) and the M94 Long-Range Biological Standoff Detection System (LRBSDS)		X	X		X		
08-2-0003.03-00CT	Treat Causalities			X	X	X	X	X
19-3-3106.03-1014	Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs)		X			X	X	
43-2-C322.03-1016	Perform Unit-Level Maintenance		X	X		X	X	
11-2-C302.03-1010	Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net	X	X	X	X	X	X	
12-3-C216.03-1216	Maintain Platoon Strength	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
03-3-0008	Issue an Operation Order (OPORD)		X	X		X	X	
03-3-0009	Prepare for Operations	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
03-3-0010	Establish and Operate the [HARRIS] High Frequency Radio Set		X	X	X	X	X	X
03-3-0013	Establish Wire Communications		X	X	X	X		
03-3-0030	Coordinate with the Unit Commander/Higher Headquarters for Unit Employment	X	X	X	X	X	X	

3-5. Time Constraints. Some units may have less time to train to standard the above missions. Normally, these units are found in the RC. Because of the narrow window in training, reserve units may need to modify the number of collective tasks found in the STXs during a specified FTX.

CHAPTER 4

Training Exercise

4-1. General. The trainer uses training exercises to prepare soldiers to perform collective tasks to execute the unit's primary mission and other critical tasks. Two types of training exercises (FTXs and STXs) are included in this MTP. These exercises assist the trainer in developing, sustaining, and evaluating the unit's mission proficiency. Table 4-1 lists the exercises for this MTP by title, exercise number, and page number.

Table 4-1. Index of BIDS PLATOON Training Exercises

4-2. Field Training Exercise. The FTX is specifically designed to train unit leaders to execute the unit's wartime mission and mission-essential and common collective tasks. These specific duties and job responsibilities are inherent in the BIDS company/unit and the LRBSDS team.

4-3. Situational Training Exercises. An STX is a short scenario-driven, mission-oriented, tactical training exercise. It provides the means to train a group of closely related collective tasks. It gives information for training smaller component tasks within a specific mission. The STX does several important functions. It--

a. Provides repetitive training on “bite-size chunks” of missions.

b. Allows training to zero in on training deficiencies.

c. Allows a unit or an element to practice the selected critical parts of a mission before practicing the entire mission.

d. Saves critical time by providing a majority of the information required or needed to develop a training vehicle.

FTX 1

CONDUCT BIOLOGICAL SURVEILLANCE (BIOSURVEILLANCE) IN ENTRY/LODGMENT OPERATIONS

1. Objective. This FTX provides training and evaluation of the BIDS platoon's proficiency to deploy to a theater of operations, select an initial biological surveillance site, document biological background, and conduct biosurveillance operations.

2. Interface. The following platoon STXs support this FTX:

STX A -- Conduct a Tactical Road March
STX B -- Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) and Defend a Unit Perimeter
STX C -- Deploy/Redeploy from a Theater of Operations
STX D -- Respond to a Biological Surveillance (Biosurveillance) Alert
STX E -- Occupy/Displace from a Biological Surveillance (Biosurveillance) Site
STX F -- Evacuate a Biological Sample
STX G -- Document Biological Background Data

3. Training. Execute this FTX in transition from a home station or garrison, to a port of embarkation (POE), to a field environment, and under a variety of conditions.

a. Before the unit conducts this FTX, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in required tasks. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and how to implement the unit’s SOP.

(2) Unit training meetings that require the leadership to brief and coordinate training areas, air-, sea-, rail-, or tactical-motor movement, logistics, observers/controllers (O/Cs), training devices and simulations, and other training resource requirements.

(3) Troop-leading procedures and the military decision-making process.

(4) Planning, preparing for, and executing tactical or nontactical road marches.

(5) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing NBC hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and defensive positions.

(6) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of the training areas you will use to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations during rehearsals.

(7) BIDS unit and team doctrinal employment discussion to include the dispersion of BIDS teams throughout a corps or division area; and the resultant impact on command and control, mission operations, and support requirements (including security).

b. Tips for training. Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this FTX are:

(1) Familiarize yourself with the requirements for each individual and collective task for biosurveillance planning, selecting a biosurveillance site, documenting biological background, and conducting biosurveillance according to FM 3-101-1, 3-101-4, 3-1-1-6 and TM 3-6665-349-12&P.

(2) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercises.

(a) An adequate training area should include a facility to prepare your equipment for rail, air, or sea deployment.

(b) Because deployment exercises can cover large distances, they are very dependent upon communications hardware; if possible conduct a communications exercise (COMEX) to test your ability to communicate at the training area.

(c) Conduct a tactical exercise without troops (TEWT) or terrain walk of the FTX areas.

(d) During the terrain walk, emphasize coordination with the authorities at the Port of Embarkation (POE), the port of debarkation (POD), and the tactical assembly area (TAA).

(3) Get a weather forecast for the training days. During weather analysis, emphasize the--

(a) Expected precipitation.

(b) Time of begin morning nautical twilight (BMNT) and end evening nautical twilight (EENT).

(c) Expected ambient temperature.

(d) Expected relative humidity.

(e) Impact of weather factors on the unit’s movement and biosurveillance operations.

(4) Conduct a terrain analysis, emphasizing the—

(a) Effects of terrain on movement, staging, upload, and entry/lodgment operations.

(b) Location of the platoon's command post (CP) and biosurveillance teams during movement, staging, upload, and entry/lodgment operations.

(c) Selection of terrain that helps canalize local wind currents to the BIDS.

(d) Selection of terrain that is upwind of the force being protected.

(5) Review the standards for the MTP T&EOs O/Cs that support this exercise.

(6) Perform leader checks before conducting this FTX, to include--

(a) Are platoon personnel trained in all individual and collective tasks?

(b) Have I established an SOP and immediate-action drills for the mission profile?

(c) Are METL task checklists available?

(d) Have we performed before-operations equipment maintenance?

(e) Are ammunition, prescribed load list (PLL), and combat loads adequate?

(f) Have we rehearsed safety procedures and conducted a thorough risk analysis?

(g) Have we coordinated with contracted logistic support (CLS) for maintenance and technical inspection support?

(h) Have we coordinated and laid on all classes of CSS support?

(7) Discuss the duties of the road guides and the advanced party.

(a) Reconnoiter the routes to the training area and plan your initial AA. Make recommendations for changing the routes or AA, if necessary (based upon the ground reconnaissance).

(b) During the reconnaissance, learn from the POE or POD authorities what will be expected of the unit to prepare to load equipment and vehicles. Task-organize the advanced party to prepare the unit to accomplish these tasks.

(c) Assemble the equipment to include pioneer tools, NBC detection equipment, marking devices, field sanitation equipment, and communications equipment. By the time of the linkup, all necessary staging area setup should be accomplished.

(d) Obtain control of the training areas (for example, sign for ranges or open range via the range control radio network or telephone). Secure previously coordinated training area support, as applicable (for example, medics with ambulances).

(e) Establish positions for the road guides and prepare a detailed drop-off and pick-up plan.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. To conduct this exercise, use the fragmentary order (FRAGO) in the special situation.

b. After members of the platoon demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leader tasks, you have numerous options for training this FTX.

(1) Under baseline conditions—that is, in daylight, with no significant weather phenomena, no biological agents, simulants, no nuclear or chemical threat, no OPFOR, easy terrain, and unlimited logistical support.

(2) With the BIDS platoon deployed in an area array.

(3) With the BIDS platoon deployed in a critical node array.

(4) With or without OPFOR.

(5) Under varied environmental conditions, such as desert, mountain, or jungle areas; winter zones; or urbanized terrain.

(6) During day and/or night operations. While the normal mission profile has the BIDS unit operating primarily from 2 hours before dark to 2 hours after dawn, under the crawl, walk, run training philosophy it may be necessary to conduct some individual, crew, and unit training in the daylight.

c. Tailor the training exercise to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. Given your unit's mission, equipment, level of readiness, and time available, make this MTP fit your situation. Remember to teach, conduct a TEWT, and then execute the training mission. Apply the crawl, walk, run principle to this training and use common sense. Do not waste critical training resources by increasing the training tempo when the unit is not able to perform the mission in the baseline environment.

d. Conduct this exercise in daylight and without pressure. Add various threats, to include NBC threat and OPFOR. As soon as possible, begin night and continuous operations as most threat biological agent employment tactics call for attacking our forces around dawn and dusk. By adding pressure and developing increasing intensity and tempo of operations, you can make this a very difficult exercise. Your options are limited only by your imagination.

e. Use OPFOR to oppose your entry into the theater or to infiltrate or test the perimeter. Use the Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System (MILES) and other simulations to realistically portray the OPFOR weapons and the impact of battle losses on operations.

f. Use the tasks listed in chapter 3 of this FTX to build the master events list (MEL) for the exercise scenario.

g. Observers/controllers must monitor all training actions to include--

(1) Control the tempo of the exercise and function as notional units for reporting or coordination.

(2) Are responsible for injecting incidents, orders, or information as specified in your MEL.

(3) Must be senior trainers, proficient in all aspects of the task and, if applicable, the simulations used in the FTX.

(4) Ensure that during the early stages of training, the BIDS unit members comprehend the tactics and fire planning or biological weapons employment doctrine of a potential adversary.

h. Make a plan based upon METT-TC factors.

(1) Mission. What are the specified and implied tasks for this operation?

(2) Enemy. What is the likelihood of attack, and where, when, how, and with what? Develop a situation template (SITEMP) that provides information to plan for BIDS employment.

(3) Terrain and weather. What are the military aspects of terrain that may inhibit our ability to deploy to the theater, defend our TAA, and conduct biosurveillance?

(4) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and their equipment? (NOTE: You must inspect your soldiers and their equipment before any training. Ensure that your soldiers have all of the items listed on the packing list/load plan. Limit personal items to reduce morale and discipline problems during training.)

(5) Time available. How much time do my soldiers have to prepare? How much time do we have to get to the training site? How much planning time do I have? (NOTE: Apply the one-third/two-thirds planning time rule here. Use no more than one-third of the total time available for your planning, allowing your soldiers two-thirds of the time available to prepare.)

(6) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

i. Conduct the necessary coordination and modify your plan accordingly.

j. Conduct troop-leading procedures. The platoon leader and subordinate leaders will begin the backwards-planning sequence as they begin the troop-leading process to include--

(1) Receive and analyze the mission. See paragraphs 5 and 6 of this FTX.

(2) Issue a warning order. This must include the time and the location for issuing the final OPORD.

(3) Make a tentative plan. Consider METT-TC factors when making the plan.

(4) Start necessary movement. Dispatch advanced parties or begin other necessary movement (for example, march order platoon vehicles; post road guides).

(5) Reconnoiter. Always conduct a ground reconnaissance of the training area whenever possible.

(6) Complete the plan. Include an MEL for the exercise.

(7) Issue the complete order. Use the standard five-paragraph OPORD format.

k. Brief your platoon.

(1) Ensure that they understand the training scenario and plan by having them back brief you.

(2) Have team leaders describe their actions, using a terrain map or sand table whenever possible.

(3) Discuss the security requirements on the march and during halts. Further, discuss risk analysis and safety issues, immediate-action drills (for example, actions upon contact), air guards, weapons control orders, fields of fire, refueling procedures, and control measures.

l. Establish physical security and communications immediately upon closing of the training area.

m. Perform before-, during-, and after-operations maintenance.

n. Ensure that your O/Cs conduct AARs.

5. General Situation.

a. The National Command Authority (NCA) is deploying elements of the 10th US Corps to establish a lodgment in a theater of operations. The _____ platoon (BIDS) will provide biosurveillance in support of this entry/lodgment operation. The objective is to protect the force from ABO hazards.

b. Exercising units will accomplish the following:

(1) Develop a plan to accomplish the mission within the time allowed.

(2) Analyze the mission and task, then prepare for operations.

(3) Brief the platoon, then check to ensure that the instructions are understood.

(4) Conduct preparations for overseas movement.

(5) Move to a POE, then deploy by rail, air, or sea.

(6) Marshall at the POD, then conduct a tactical road march to the TAA.

(7) Occupy and defend the TAA.

(8) Prepare for biosurveillance operations.

(9) Select biosurveillance sites.

(10) Document biological background.

(11) Conduct biosurveillance.

(12) Report all combat information.

(13) Move tactically to a previously designated decontamination site.

(14) Move to the TAA for debriefing.

(15) Prepare to assume a new mission on order.

c. The unit will defend its position or a portion of a larger unit's perimeter.

d. Enemy forces can attack in various strengths depending on the battlefield location.

e. The enemy will use weapons of mass destruction throughout the theater of operation.

6. Special Situation.

a. The BIDS company commander issues a FRAGO (Figure 4-1).

FRAGMENTARY ORDER

Copy ___ of ___ copies
Issuing headquarters
Place of issue
Date-time group of signature
Message reference number

FRAGO Number: _____

References:

1. SITUATION.

2. MISSION. The NCA is deploying elements of the 10th US Corps to establish a lodgment in a theater of operations. A BIDS platoon will provide biosurveillance in support of this entry/lodgment operation. The objective is to protect the force from ABO hazards. Report to the Corps emergency operations center at DDTTTT hours for your movement order.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Intent.

b. Concept of operations.

c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Troop safety information is in accordance with the unit's SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-1. Sample FRAGO for FTX 1

b. Give the platoon warning order, then report to the corps operations section where the corps chemical officer will give the following briefing:

"The NCA is deploying elements of the 10th US Corps (Joint Task Force Army Forces [ARFOR]) to establish a lodgment in a theater of operations. 52nd Infantry Division (Mech) has established a beachhead and is securing the ports and airfields to facilitate the entry of the remainder of the Corps. The enemy has developed and weaponized ABO, and is expected to use these to oppose the lodgment and prevent the Corps from continuing operations. Enemy units have linked up with local partisan units, so be prepared for ambushes and general harassment of operations.

"The 10th US Corps is preparing to conduct offensive operations in theater, with 54th Infantry Division (ID) (Mech) and 23rd AD conducting a forward passage of lines to seize the enemy capitol. The platoon mission is to provide biosurveillance to support the Corps lodgment operation."

"Here is the general situation. The enemy has weaponized ABO and has threatened to use them in the next 48 hours if we do not withdraw from our lodgment. If biological weapons are employed, the tactical situation may necessitate such a withdrawal because we presently have no effective prophylaxis to protect against the ABOs the enemy may use. Your platoon is tasked to provide biosurveillance to protect the force within the lodgment, permitting our follow-on forces to assemble and prepare for operations. Prepare your platoon to move on order."

"The situation has not changed. Enemy units have linked up with local partisan units. Because you must operate independently from the majority of the forces in the base cluster, you must establish a separate operating base with a 360-degree perimeter defense vicinity within the TAA. You are now designated as Base A15. You must coordinate for all combat reconnaissance patrols to protect your base and notify the base cluster HQ whenever you are not occupying your base.

"Be prepared for ambushes and general harassment of operations.

"Be prepared to continue operations from this base."

c. Plan the operation and brief key leaders. Provide a movement order for the deployment and entry operation according to the movement plan, time-phased forces deployment list (TPFDL), and the installation's SOP.

d. Upon arrival in theater, the platoon leader reports to the 52d (ID) (Mech) chemical officer for the following briefing:

e. Upon arrival in the TAA, the platoon leader reports to the base cluster commander for the following briefing:

f. Table 4-2 provides the sequence of events and the estimated time required for specific events in this exercise.

Table 4-2. Sequence of Events and Estimated Time Allocation for FTX 1

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Alert Unit, Issue warning order to platoon, and Prepare to Move	1
2	Plan and Coordinate the Deployment	3
3	Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance and Complete the Plan	12
4	Issue an OPORD	1
5	Prepare the platoon for Overseas Movement and Deploy the Advanced Party	2
6	Perform a Road March	2
7	Occupy the Unit Staging Area	1
9	Prepare Vehicles and Mission Essential Equipment for Air, Sea, or Rail Shipment	8
10	Conduct Deployment. The time should be transparent to the exercising unit.	N/A
11	Receive Vehicles and Mission-Essential Equipment from Air, Sea, or Rail Shipment and Prepare for Operations	8
12	Conduct a Tactical Road March	2
13	Occupy the TAA and Prepare Base Defense	4
14	Plan Employment of BIDS platoon	2
15	Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance, Select Biosurveillance Sites, and Complete the Plan	2
16	Issue a FRAGO and Conduct a Tactical Road March to Biosurveillance Sites	1
17	Establish Initial Biosurveillance	4
18	Brief the Commander and Conduct an AAR	1
	TOTAL TIME:	**56 Hours**
Note: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.		

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum trainers and O/Cs. The BIDS company or battalion commander trains and evaluates the platoon leader. The platoon leader trains and evaluates the teams. If available, use additional O/C personnel at the defensive position to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. Use OPFOR to infiltrate or test the perimeter. This FTX requires OPFOR in no more than a squad strength with several dressed as partisans. Using OPFOR requires vehicles with radios to transport the OPFOR. O/Cs can serve as umpires if you include the MILES or other casualty assessment systems in the training.

c. Vehicles and communications. Use organic vehicles and equipment or use a terrain board or sand table. If there is not a base or base cluster HQ and fire support present, you will need one O/C with a radio to function as a reporting activity.

d. Maneuver area. The training area, ideally, should provide a 10-kilometer road march to a POE, a POD, a 10-kilometer road march to a TAA, and have an area suitable for a platoon defense (approximately 500 meters x 500 meters). The area must have defensible terrain, provisions for interlocking fires, adequate cover, and trafficability. Finally, the area representing the lodgment should be large enough to deploy the platoon in full area array mission configuration (frontage of 60 kilometers).

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the following:

(1) Class III requirements: 150 gallons minimum of JP8 or diesel fuel per BIDS team.

(2) Communications/communications security (COMSEC) requirement:

(a) Ten each training SOI.

(b) Frequencies: 4 each high frequency (HF) high (HI), HF low (LO), and FM.

(c) One KYK13 with COMSEC fill (Global Positioning System [GPS] encryption per platoon.

(3) Ammunition. Table 4-3 gives the ammunition requirements required for this FTX.

(4) Biological agent simulants.

Table 4-3. Ammunition Requirements for FTX 1

Ammunition	Quantity
Signal Illumination, Cluster[1, 2]	10 (O/Cs)
Cartridge, Blank 5.56 mm	See STRAC Manual
Cartridge, Blank 7.62 mm	See STRAC Manual
Flare, Surface, Trip	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, Booby Trap[3]	See STRAC Manual
NOTES: **[1]Refer to local signal operation instruction (SOI) or range requirements for colors required for control.** **[2]Ground star: red ground, white ground, green parachute, and red parachute.** **[3]Simulator booby trap: flash, illumination, and whistle.**	

8. Training and Evaluation Outlines Sequence. The collective tasks that support this exercise can be found in Chapter 3, Table 3-3.

FTX - 2

MAINTAIN THEATER BIOLOGICAL SURVEILLANCE (BIOSURVEILLANCE)

1. Objective. This FTX provides training and evaluation of the BIDS platoon's proficiency to document biological background, conduct biosurveillance operations, and evacuate biological samples.

2. Interface. The following platoon STXs support this FTX:

STX A -- Conduct a Tactical Road March
STX B -- Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) and Defend a Unit Perimeter
STX D -- Respond to a Biological Surveillance (Biosurveillance) Alert
STX E -- Occupy/Displace from a Biological Surveillance (Biosurveillance) Site
STX F -- Evacuate a Biological Sample
STX G -- Document Biological Background Data

3. Training. Execute this FTX in a field environment, and under a variety of conditions.

a. Before the unit conducts this FTX, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in required tasks. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and how to implement the unit's SOP.

(2) Unit training meetings that require the leadership to brief and coordinate training areas, air-, sea-, rail-, or tactical-motor movement, logistics, O/Cs, training devices and simulations, and other training resource requirements.

(3) Troop-leading procedures and the military decision-making process.

(4) Planning, preparing for, and executing tactical or nontactical road marches.

(5) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing NBC hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and defensive positions.

(6) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of the training areas you will use to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations during rehearsals.

(7) BIDS unit and team doctrinal employment discussions to include the dispersion of BIDS teams throughout a corps or division area; and the resultant impact on command and control (C2), mission operations, and support requirements (including security).

b. Tips for training. Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this FTX are:

(1) Familiarize yourself with the requirements for each individual and collective task for biosurveillance planning, selecting a biosurveillance site, documenting biological background, and conducting biosurveillance according to FM 3-101-4 and TM 3-6665-349-12&P.

(2) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training area before conducting the exercises.

(a) The BIDS platoon is very dependent upon communications hardware; if possible conduct a COMEX to test your ability to communicate at the training area.

(b) Conduct a TEWT or terrain walk of the FTX areas.

(c) During the terrain walk, emphasize coordination with the base cluster commander and the corps chemical officer, and the contractor logistic support (CLS).

(3) Get a weather forecast for the training days. During weather analysis, emphasize the--

(a) Expected precipitation.

(b) Time of BMNT and EENT.

(c) Expected ambient temperature.

(d) Expected relative humidity.

(e) Impact of weather factors on the unit's movement and biosurveillance operations.

(f) Historical weather patterns based on the time of the year.

(4) Conduct a terrain analysis, emphasizing the--

(a) Effects of terrain on movement.

(b) Location of the platoon CP and biosurveillance teams in the TAA and during biosurveillance operations.

(c) Selection of terrain that helps canalize local wind currents to the BIDS.

(d) Selection of terrain that is upwind of the force being protected.

(5) Review the standards for the MTP T&EOs that support this exercise.

(6) Perform leader checks before conducting this FTX, to include--

(a) Are platoon personnel trained in all individual and collective tasks?

(b) Have I established an SOP and immediate-action drills for the mission profile?

(c) Are METL task checklists available?

(d) Have we performed before-operations equipment maintenance?

(e) Have we performed technical inspection of the BIDS component system.

(f) Are ammunition, PLL, and combat loads adequate?

(g) Have we coordinated with contract logistics support for on/off site support?

(f) Have we rehearsed safety procedures and conducted a thorough risk analysis?

(7) Discuss the duties of the road guides and advanced party.

(a) Reconnoiter the routes to the training area and plan your initial AA. Make recommendations for changing the routes or the AA, if necessary (based upon the ground reconnaissance).

(b) During the reconnaissance, learn from the base cluster commander what will be expected of the unit. Task-organize the advanced party to prepare the unit to accomplish these tasks.

(c) Assemble the equipment to include pioneer tools, NBC detection equipment, marking devices, field sanitation equipment, and communications equipment. By the time of the linkup, all necessary setup should be accomplished.

(d) Obtain control of the training areas (for example, sign for ranges or open range via the range control radio network or telephone). Secure previously coordinated training area support, as applicable (for example, medics with ambulances).

(e) Establish positions for the road guides and prepare a detailed drop-off and pick-up plan.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. To conduct this exercise, use the FRAGO in the special situation.

b. After members of the platoon demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leader tasks, you have numerous options for training this FTX.

(1) Under baseline conditions—that is, in daylight, with no significant weather phenomena, no biological simulators, no nuclear or chemical threat, no OPFOR, easy terrain, and unlimited logistical support.

(2) With the BIDS platoon deployed in an area array.

(3) With the BIDS platoon deployed in a critical node array.

(4) With or without OPFOR.

(5) Under varied environmental conditions, such as desert, mountain, or jungle areas; winter zones; or urbanized terrain.

(6) During day and/or night operations. While the normal mission profile has the BIDS platoon operating primarily from 2 hours before dark to 2 hours after dawn, under the crawl, walk, run training philosophy it may be necessary to conduct some individual, crew, and unit training in daylight.

c. Tailor the training exercise to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. Given your unit's mission, equipment, level of readiness, and time available, make this MTP fit your situation. Remember to teach, conduct a TEWT, and then execute the training mission. Apply the crawl, walk, run principle to this training, and use common sense. Do not waste critical training resources by increasing the training tempo when the unit is not able to perform the mission in the baseline environment.

d. Conduct this exercise in daylight and without pressure. Add various threats, to include NBC threat and OPFOR. As soon as possible, begin night and continuous operations, as most threat biological agent employment tactics call for attacking our forces around dawn and dusk. By adding pressure and developing increasing intensity and tempo of operations, you can make this a very difficult exercise. Your options are limited only by your imagination.

e. Opposing forces. Use OPFOR to infiltrate or test the perimeter. Use the MILES and other simulations to realistically portray the OPFOR weapons and the impact of battle losses on operations.

f. Use the tasks listed in chapter 3 of this FTX to build the MEL for the exercise scenario.

g. Observer/controllers must monitor all training actions to include--

(1) Control the tempo of the exercise and function as notional units for reporting or coordination.

(2) Responsibility for injecting incidents, orders, or information as specified in your MEL.

(3) Must be senior trainers, proficient in all aspects of the task and, if applicable, the simulations used in the FTX.

(4) Ensure that, during the early stages of training, the BIDS platoon members comprehend the tactics and fire planning or biological weapons employment doctrine of a potential adversary.

h. Make a plan based upon METT-TC factors.

(1) Mission. What are the specified and implied tasks for this operation?

(2) Enemy. What is the likelihood of attack, and where, when, how, and with what? Develop a SITEMP that provides information to plan for BIDS employment.

(3) Terrain and weather. What are the military aspects of terrain that may inhibit our ability to defend our TAA or conduct biosurveillance?

(4) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and their equipment? (NOTE: You must inspect your soldiers and their equipment before any training. Ensure that your soldiers have all of the items listed on the packing list/load plan. Limit personal items to reduce morale and discipline problems during training.)

(5) Time available. How much time do my soldiers have to prepare? How much time do we have to get to the training site? How much planning time do I have? (NOTE: Apply the one-third/two-third planning time rule here. Use no more than one-third of the total time available for your planning, allowing your soldiers two-thirds of the time available to prepare.)

(6) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

i. Conduct the necessary coordination and modify your plan accordingly.

j. Conduct troop-leading procedures. The platoon leader and subordinate leaders will begin the backwards-planning sequence as they begin the troop-leading process to include--

(1) Receive and analyze the mission. See paragraphs **5** and **6** of this FTX.

(2) Issue a warning order. This must include time and location for issuing the final operations order.

(3) Make a tentative plan. This plan should be based upon METT-TC factors.

(4) Start necessary movement. Dispatch advanced parties or begin other necessary movement (for example, march order platoon vehicles; post road guides).

(5) Reconnoiter. Always conduct a ground reconnaissance of the training area whenever possible.

(6) Complete the plan. This should include a MEL for the exercise.

(7) Issue the complete order. This should use the standard five-paragraph OPORD format.

k. Brief your platoon.

(1) Ensure that they understand the training scenario and plan by having them back brief you.

(2) Have team leaders describe their actions, using a terrain map or sand table whenever possible.

(3) Discuss security requirements on the march and during halts. Further, discuss risk analysis and safety issues, immediate action drills (for example, actions upon contact), air guards, weapons control orders, fields of fire, refueling procedures, and control measures.

l. Establish physical security and communications immediately upon closing of the training area.

m. Perform before-, during-, and after-operations maintenance.

n. Ensure that your O/Cs conduct AARs.

5. General Situation.

a. The NCA has deployed elements of the 10th US Corps to establish a lodgment in a theater of operations. The (BIDS) unit is providing biosurveillance in support of this entry operation. The objective is to protect the force from ABO hazards.

b. Exercising units will accomplish the following:

(1) Develop a plan to accomplish the mission within the time allowed.

(2) Analyze the mission and task, then prepare for operations.

(3) Brief the platoon, then check to ensure that the instructions are understood.

(4) Make a tactical road march to the TAA.

(5) Occupy and defend the TAA.

(6) Prepare for biosurveillance operations.

(7) Select biosurveillance sites.

(8) Document biological background data.

(9) Conduct biosurveillance.

(10) Report all combat information.

(11) Move tactically to a previously designated decontamination site.

(12) Move to the TAA for debriefing.

(13) Prepare to assume a new mission on order.

c. The unit will defend its position or a portion of a larger unit's perimeter.

d. Enemy forces can attack in various strengths depending on the battlefield location.

e. The enemy will use weapons of mass destruction throughout the theater of operation.

6. Special Situation.

a. The BIDS company commander issues a FRAGO to support the training (Figure 4-2).

FRAGMENTARY ORDER

Copy ___ of ___ copies
Issuing headquarters
Place of issue
Date-time group of signature
Message reference number

FRAGO Number: _____

References:

1. SITUATION. The NCA has deployed elements of the 10th US Corps to establish a lodgment in a theater of operations. A BIDS platoon is providing biosurveillance in support of this entry/operation. The Corps is now ready to begin offensive operations. The objective is to protect the force from ABO hazards. Report to the corps CP at DDTTTT hours for your orders.

2. MISSION.

3. EXECUTION.

   a. Concept of operations.

   b. Tasks to subordinate units.

   c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Troop safety information is in accordance with the unit's SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-2. Sample FRAGO for FTX 2

b. Give the platoon warning order, then report to the corps tactical command post (TAC CP) where the corps chemical officer will give the following briefing:

"*The NCA has deployed elements of the 10th US Corps to establish a lodgment in a theater of operations. 52nd Infantry Division (Mech) has established a lodgment. The 10th US Corps is prepared to conduct offensive operations in Theater. 54th ID (Mech) and 23rd AD conducted a forward passage of lines and are moving to seize the enemy capitol. The enemy has developed and weaponized ABO, and are expected to use these do oppose the lodgment and prevent the Corps from continuing operations. Your platoon is tasked to provide biosurveillance to protect the 23rd AD division support area (DSA) for the lead division. Prepare your platoon to move on order.*

"Enemy units have linked up with local partisan units, so be prepared for ambushes and general harassment of operations."

"The situation has not changed. Enemy units have linked up with local partisan units. Because you must operate independently from the majority of the forces in the base cluster, you must establish a separate operating base with a 360-degree perimeter defense vicinity within the TAA. You are now designated as Base 23A15. You must coordinate for all combat reconnaissance patrols to protect your base, and notify the base cluster HQ whenever you are not occupying your base.

“Be prepared for ambushes and general harassment of operations.

“Be prepared to continue operations from your base."

c. Upon arrival in the DSA, the platoon leader reports to the base cluster commander for the following briefing

d. Table 4-4 provides the sequence of events and the estimated time required for specific events in this exercise.

Table 4-4. Sequence of Events and Estimated Time Allocation for FTX 2

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Conduct Tactical Road March	2
2	Occupy TAA and Prepare Base Defense	4
3	Alert Unit, Issue Warning Order to Platoon, and Prepare to Move	1
4	Conduct Leader’s Reconnaissance and Complete the Plan	2
5	Issue OPORD	1
6	Displace and Reestablish Biological Surveillance	4
7	Plan Employment of BIDS Platoon	2
8	Conduct Leader’s Reconnaissance, Select Biosurveillance Sites, and Complete the Plan	2
9	Issue FRAGO and Conduct Tactical Road March to Biosurveillance Sites	1
10	Document Biological Background	1
11	Prepare Biological Samples for Evacuation	1
12	Evacuate Biological Samples	2
13	Brief Commander and Conduct AAR	1
	TOTAL TIME:	**23 Hours**
Note: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.		

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum trainers and observer/controllers. The BIDS company or battalion commander trains and evaluates the platoon leader. The platoon leader trains and evaluates the team. If available, use additional O/C personnel at the defensive position to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. Use OPFOR to infiltrate or test the base perimeter and harass the unit while on the move. This FTX requires OPFOR in no more than a squad strength with several dressed as partisans. Using OPFOR will require vehicles with radios to transport the OPFOR. O/Cs can serve as umpires if you include MILES or other casualty assessment systems in the training.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Use organic vehicles and equipment or use a terrain board or sand table. If there is not a base or base cluster HQ and fire support present, you will require one O/C with a radio to function as a reporting activity.

d. Maneuver Area. The training area, ideally, should support a 10-kilometer road march to a TAA, and have an area suitable for a platoon defense (approximately 500 meters x 500 meters). The area must have defensible terrain, provisions for interlocking fires, adequate cover, and trafficability. Finally, the area representing the DSA should be large enough to deploy the platoon in critical node array mission configuration.

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the following:

(1) Class III requirements: 100 gallons minimum of JP8 or diesel fuel per BIDS team.

(2) Biological agent simulant.

(3) Communications or COMSEC requirement.

(a) Ten each training SOI.

(b) Frequencies: 4 each HF (HI), HF (LO), and FM.

(c) One KYK13 with COMSEC fill (GPS encryption) per platoon.

(4) Ammunition. Table 4-5 gives the ammunition requirements required for this FTX.

Table 4-5. Ammunition Requirements for FTX 2

Ammunition	Quantity
Signal Illumination, Cluster[1, 2]	10 (O/Cs)
Cartridge, Blank 5.56 mm	See STRAC Manual
Cartridge, Blank 7.62 mm	See STRAC Manual
Flare, Surface, Trip	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, Booby Trap[3]	See STRAC Manual
NOTES: **[1]Refer to local SOI or range requirements for colors required for control.** **[2]Ground star: red ground, white ground, green parachute, and red parachute.** **[3]Simulator booby trap: flash, illumination, and whistle.**	

8. Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence. The collective tasks that support this exercise can be found in Chapter 3, Table 3-3.

FTX 3

CONDUCT BIOLOGICAL SURVEILLANCE (BIOSURVEILLANCE) DURING PEACEKEEPING OPERATIONS

1. Objective. This sample FTX provides training and evaluation of the BIDS platoon's proficiency to deploy to a theater of operations, select an initial biological surveillance site, document biological background, and conduct biosurveillance operations during peacetime.

2. Interface. The following platoon STXs support this FTX:

STX A -- Conduct a Tactical Road March
STX B -- Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) and Defend a Unit Perimeter
STX C -- Deploy/Redeploy from a Theater of Operations
STX D -- Respond to a Biological Surveillance (Biosurveillance) Alert
STX E -- Occupy/Displace from a Biological Surveillance (Biosurveillance) Site
STX F -- Evacuate a Biological Sample
STX G -- Document Biological Background Data

3. Training. Execute this FTX in transition from a home station or garrison, to a POE, to a field environment, and under a variety of conditions.

a. Before the unit conducts this FTX, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in required tasks. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and how to implement the unit's SOP.

(2) Unit training meetings that require the leadership to brief and coordinate training areas, air, sea, rail, or tactical-motor movement, logistics, O/Cs, training devices and simulations, and other training resource requirements.

(3) Troop-leading procedures and the military decision-making process.

(4) Planning, preparing for, and executing tactical or nontactical road marches.

(5) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing NBC hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and defensive positions.

(6) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of the training areas you will use to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations during rehearsals.

(7) BIDS unit and team doctrinal employment discussions to include the dispersion of BIDS teams throughout a corps or division area; and the resultant impact on C2, mission operations, and support requirements (including security).

b. Tips for training. Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this FTX are:

(1) Familiarize yourself with the requirements for each individual and collective task for biosurveillance planning, selecting a biosurveillance site, documenting biological background, and conducting biosurveillance according to FM 3-101-4 and TM 3-6665-349-12&P.

(2) Conduct a personal reconnaissance of the training areas before conducting the exercises.

(a) An adequate training area should include a facility to prepare your equipment for rail, air, or sea deployment.

(b) Because deployment exercises can cover large distances, they are very dependent upon communications hardware; if possible conduct a communications exercise to test your ability to communicate at the training area.

(c) Conduct a TEWT or terrain walk of the FTX areas.

(d) During the terrain walk, emphasize coordination with the authorities at the POE, the POD, TAA, and contractor logistic support.

(3) Get a weather forecast for the training days. During weather analysis, emphasize the--

(a) Expected precipitation.

(b) Time of BMNT and EENT.

(c) Expected ambient temperature.

(d) Expected relative humidity.

(e) Impact of weather factors on the unit's movement and biosurveillance operations.

(f) Historical weather pattern based on the time of year.

(4) Conduct a terrain analysis, emphasizing the--

(a) Effects of terrain on movement, staging, upload, and entry/lodgment operations.

(b) Location of the platoon CP and biosurveillance teams during movement, staging, upload, and entry/lodgment operations.

(c) Selection of terrain that helps canalize local wind currents to the BIDS.

(d) Selection of terrain that is upwind of the force being protected.

(5) Review the standards for the MTP T&EOs that support this exercise.

(6) Perform leader checks before conducting this FTX, to include--

(a) Are platoon personnel trained in all individual and collective tasks?

(b) Have I established an SOP and immediate-action drills for the mission profile?

(c) Are METL task checklists available?

(d) Have we performed before-operations equipment maintenance?

(e) Have we performed technical inspections of the BIDS components and system?

(f) Are ammunition, PLL, and combat loads adequate?

(g) Have we rehearsed safety procedures and conducted a thorough risk analysis?

(h) Have we coordinated with contract logistic support for on/off site support?

(7) Discuss the duties of the road guides and advanced party.

(a) Reconnoiter the routes to the training area and plan your initial AA. Make recommendations for changing the routes or AA, if necessary (based upon the ground reconnaissance).

(b) During the reconnaissance, learn from the POE or POD authorities what will be expected of the unit to prepare to load equipment and vehicles. Task-organize the advanced party to prepare the unit to accomplish these tasks.

(c) Assemble equipment to include pioneer tools, NBC detection equipment, marking devices, field sanitation equipment, and communications equipment. By the time of the linkup, all necessary staging area setup should be accomplished.

(d) Obtain control of training areas (for example, sign for ranges or open range via the range control radio network or telephone). Secure previously coordinated training area support, as applicable (for example, medics with ambulances).

(e) Establish positions for the road guides and prepare a detailed drop-off and pick-up plan.

4. Training Enhancers.

a. To conduct this exercise, use the FRAGO in the special situation.

b. After members of the platoon demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leader tasks, you have numerous options for training this FTX.

(1) Under baseline conditions—that is, in daylight, with no significant weather phenomena, no biological agents or simulants, no nuclear or chemical threat, no OPFOR, easy terrain, and unlimited logistical support.

(2) With the BIDS platoon deployed in an area array.

(3) With the BIDS platoon deployed in a critical node array.

(4) With or without OPFOR.

(5) Under varied environmental conditions, such as desert, mountain, or jungle areas; winter zones; or urbanized terrain.

(6) During day and/or night operations. While the normal mission profile has the BIDS platoon operating primarily from 2 hours before dark to 2 hours after dawn, under the crawl, walk, run training philosophy it may be necessary to conduct some individual, crew, and unit training in daylight.

c. Tailor the training exercise to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. Given your unit's mission, equipment, level of readiness, and time available, make this MTP fit your situation. Remember to teach, conduct a TEWT, and then execute the training mission. Apply the crawl, walk, run principle to this training, and use common sense. Do not waste critical training resources by increasing the training tempo when the unit is not able to perform the mission in the baseline environment.

d. Conduct this exercise in daylight, and without pressure. Add various threats, to include NBC threat and OPFOR. As soon as possible, begin night and continuous operations, as most threat biological agent employment tactics call for attacking our forces around dawn and dusk. By adding pressure and developing increasing intensity and tempo of operations, you can make this a very difficult exercise. Your options are limited only by your imagination.

e. Opposing forces. Use OPFOR to oppose your entry into the theater, or to infiltrate or test the perimeter. Use the MILES and other simulations to realistically portray the OPFOR weapons and the impact of battle losses on operations.

f. Use the tasks listed in chapter 3 of this FTX to build the MEL for the exercise scenario.

g. O/Cs must monitor all training actions. They--

(1) Control the tempo of the exercise and function as notional units for reporting or coordination.

(2) Are responsible for injecting incidents, orders, or information as specified in your MEL.

(3) Must be senior trainers, proficient in all aspects of the task and, if applicable, the simulations used in the FTX.

(4) Ensure that during the early stages of training, the BIDS platoon members comprehend the tactics and fire planning or biological weapons employment doctrine of a potential adversary.

h. Make a plan based upon METT-TC factors.

(1) Mission. What are the specified and implied tasks for this operation?

(2) Enemy. What is the likelihood of attack, and where, when, how, and with what? Develop a SITEMP that provides information to plan for BIDS employment.

(3) Terrain and weather. What are the military aspects of terrain that may inhibit our ability to deploy to the theater, defend our TAA, and conduct biosurveillance?

(4) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and their equipment? (NOTE: You must inspect your soldiers and their equipment before any training. Ensure that your soldiers have all of the items listed on the packing list/load plan. Limit personal items to reduce morale and discipline problems during training.)

(5) Time. How much time do my soldiers have to prepare? How much time do we have to get to the training site? How much planning time do I have? (NOTE: Apply the one-third/two-third planning time rule here. Use no more than one-third of the total time available for your planning, allowing your soldiers two-thirds of the time available to prepare.)

i. Conduct the necessary coordination and modify your plan accordingly.

j. Troop-leading procedures. The platoon leader and subordinate leaders will begin the backwards-planning sequence as they begin the troop-leading process. They will--

(1) Receive and analyze the mission. See paragraphs 5 and 6 of this FTX.

(2) Issue a warning order. This must include time and location for issuing the final operations order.

(3) Make a tentative plan. This plan should be based upon METT-TC factors.

(4) Start necessary movement. Dispatch advanced parties or begin other necessary movement (for example, march order platoon vehicles; post road guides).

(5) Reconnoiter. Always conduct a ground reconnaissance of the training area whenever possible.

(6) Complete the plan. This should include an MEL for the exercise.

(7) Issue the complete order. This should use the standard five-paragraph OPORD format.

k. Brief your platoon.

(1) Ensure they understand the training scenario and plan by having them back brief you.

(2) Have team leaders describe their actions, using a terrain map or sand table whenever possible.

(3) Discuss security requirements on the march and during halts. Further, discuss risk analysis and safety issues, immediate-action drills (for example, actions upon contact), air guards, weapons control orders, fields of fire, refueling procedures, and control measures.

l. Establish physical security and communications immediately upon closing of the training area.

m. Perform before-, during-, and after-operations maintenance.

n. Ensure that your O/Cs conduct AARs.

5. General Situation.

a. The NCA is deploying elements of the 10th US Corps to establish a lodgment in a theater of operations. The (BIDS) unit will provide biosurveillance in support of this entry/lodgment operation. The objective is to protect the force from agents of biological origin hazards.

b. Exercising units will accomplish the following:

(1) Develop a plan to accomplish the mission within the time allowed.

(2) Analyze the mission and task, then prepare for operations.

(3) Brief the platoon, then check to ensure that the instructions are understood.

(4) Conduct preparations for overseas movement.

(5) Move to a POE, then deploy by rail, air, or sea.

(6) Marshall at the POD, then conduct a tactical road march to the TAA.

(7) Occupy and defend the TAA.

(8) Prepare for biosurveillance operations.

(9) Select biosurveillance sites.

(10) Document biological background.

(11) Conduct biosurveillance.

(12) Report all combat information.

(13) Move tactically to a predesignated decontamination site.

(14) Move to the TAA for debriefing.

(15) Prepare to assume a new mission on order.

c. The unit will defend its position or a portion of a larger unit's perimeter.

d. Enemy forces can attack in various strengths depending on the battlefield location.

e. The enemy will use weapons of mass destruction throughout the theater of operation.

6. Special Situation.

a. The BIDS company commander issues a FRAGO (Figure 4-3).

FRAGMENTARY ORDER

Copy ___ of ___ copies
Issuing headquarters
Place of issue
Date-time group of signature
Message reference number

FRAGO Number: _____

References:

1. SITUATION. The NCA is deploying elements of the 10th US Corps to establish a lodgment in a theater of operations. A BIDS platoon will provide biosurveillance in support of this entry/lodgment operation. The objective is to protect the force from agents of biological origin hazards. Report to the Corps emergency operations center at DDTTTT hours for your movement order.

2. MISSION.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of operations.

b. Tasks to subordinate units.

c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. Troop safety information is in accordance with the unit's SOP.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-3. Sample FRAGO for FTX 3

b. Give the platoon warning order, then report to the Corps *emergency operations center* where the Corps chemical officer will give the following briefing:

"*The National Command Authority is deploying elements of the 10th US Corps to establish a lodgment in a theater of operations. 52nd Infantry Division (Mech) has established a beachhead and is securing the ports and airfields to facilitate the entry of the remainder of the Corps. Insurgents have purchased weapons containing agents of biological origin, and are expected to use these to oppose the lodgment and prevent the Corps from continuing operations.*

“The 10th US Corps is preparing to support humanitarian assistance operations in theater, with 54th (ID) (Mech) and 23rd AD providing security support. The platoon mission is to provide biosurveillance to support the Corps lodgment operation.

c. Plan the operation and brief key leaders. Provide a movement order for the deployment and entry operation in accordance with the movement plan, TPFDL, and installation SOP.

d. Upon arrival in theater, the platoon leader reports to the 52d ID (Mech) chemical officer for the following briefing:

"Here is the general situation. The enemy has weaponized agents of biological origin and has threatened to use them in the next 48 hours if we do not withdraw from our lodgment. If biological weapons are employed the tactical situation may necessitate such a withdrawal because we presently have no effective prophylaxis to the agents of biological origin the enemy may use. Your platoon is tasked to provide biosurveillance to protect the force within the lodgment, permitting our forces to assemble and prepare for operations. Prepare your platoon to move on order."

e. Upon arrival in the TAA, the platoon leader report to the base cluster commander for the following briefing:

"The situation has not changed. Because you must operate independently from the majority of the forces in the base cluster, you must establish a separate operating base with a 360-degree perimeter defense vicinity within the TAA. You are now designated as Base A15. You must coordinate for all reconnaissance and security patrols to protect your base, and notify the base cluster HQ whenever you are not occupying your base.

“Be prepared for ambushes and general harassment of operations.

“Be prepared to continue operations from this base."

f. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

g. Table 4-6 provides the sequence of events and the estimated time required for specific events in this exercise.

Table 4-6. Sequence of Events and Estimated Time Allocation for FTX 3

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Alert Unit, Issue Warning Order to platoon, and Prepare to Move	1
2	Plan and Coordinate the Deployment	3
3	Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance and Complete the Plan	12
4	Issue an OPORD	1
5	Prepare the Platoon or Overseas Movement and Deploy the Advanced Party	2
6	Conduct a Road March	202
7	Occupy the Unit Staging Area	1
9	Prepare Vehicles and Mission Essential Equipment for Air, Sea, or Rail Shipment	8
10	Conduct Deployment. The time should be transparent to the exercising unit.	N/A
11	Receive Vehicles and Mission-Essential Equipment from Air, Sea, or Rail Shipment and Prepare for Operations	8
12	Conduct a Tactical Road March	2
13	Occupy the TAA and Prepare Base Defense	4
14	Plan Employment of BIDS platoon	2
15	Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance, Select Biosurveillance Sites, and Complete the Plan	2
16	Issue a FRAGO and Conduct a Tactical Road March to Biosurveillance Sites	1
17	Establish Initial Biosurveillance	4
18	Brief the Commander and Conduct an AAR	1
	TOTAL TIME:	**56 Hours**
Note: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.		

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum trainers and O/Cs. The BIDS company commander or battalion trains and evaluates the platoon leader. The platoon leader trains and evaluates the platoon. If available, use additional O/C personnel at the defensive position to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. Use OPFOR to infiltrate or test the perimeter. This FTX requires OPFOR in no more than a squad strength with several dressed as partisans. Using OPFOR requires vehicles with radios to transport the OPFOR. O/Cs can serve as umpires if you include MILES or other casualty assessment systems in the training.

c. Vehicles and communications. Use organic vehicles and equipment or use a terrain board or sand table. If there is not a base or base cluster HQ and fire support present, you will require one O/C with a radio to function as a reporting activity.

d. Maneuver area. The training area, ideally, should support a 10-kilometer road march to a POE, a POD, and TAA, and have an area suitable for a platoon defense (approximately 500 meters x 500 meters). The area must have defensible terrain, provisions for interlocking fires, adequate cover, and trafficability. Finally, the area representing the lodgment should be large enough to deploy the platoon in full area array mission configuration (frontage of 60 kilometers).

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the following:

(1) Class III requirements: 150 gallons minimum of JP8 or diesel fuel per BIDS team.

(2) Communications/COMSEC requirement.

(a) Ten each training SOI.

(b) Frequencies: 4 each HF (HI), HF (LO), and FM.

(c) One KYK13 with COMSEC fill GPS encryption per platoon.

(3) Ammunition. Table 4-7 gives ammunition requirements required for this FTX.

(4) Biological agent simulant.

Table 4-7. Ammunition Requirements for FTX 3

Ammunition	Quantity
Signal Illumination, Cluster[1, 2]	10 (O/Cs)
Cartridge, Blank 5.56 mm	See STRAC Manual
Cartridge, Blank 7.62 mm	See STRAC Manual
Flare, Surface, Trip	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, Booby Trap[3]	See STRAC Manual
NOTES: **[1]Refer to local SOI or range requirements for colors required for control.** **[2]Ground star: red ground, white ground, green parachute, and red parachute.** **[3]Simulator booby trap: flash, illumination, and whistle.**	

8. Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence. The collective tasks that support this exercise can be found in Chapter 3, Table 3-3.

BIDS PLATOON
STX A

CONDUCT A TACTICAL ROAD MARCH

1. Objective. This STX provides functional training for the unit leadership in exercising command and control responsibilities over subordinate elements. It will provide the platoon leader, platoon sergeant, and other key leaders with training in tactically marching the unit to specific areas of operation.

2. Interface. This STX is used whenever the unit is required to move from one location to another to include certain convoy operations. It should be used several times during major FTXs. The mission requires enhanced tactical situational awareness, mandating interface with the division staff or the theater or area support group's movement control officer. Signal units support the operation, providing mobile subscriber equipment (MSE) nodes through which the platoon can contact or interface with these elements.

3. Training.

a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in required tasks. Leader training includes--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and how to implement the unit's SOPs.

(2) Unit training meetings that require the leadership to brief and coordinate training areas, movement, logistics, O/Cs, training devices and simulations, and other training resource requirements.

(3) Troop-leading procedures and the military decision-making process.

(4) Planning, preparing for, and executing tactical road marches.

(5) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and defensive positions.

(6) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of the training areas you will use to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations during rehearsals.

b. Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX are:

(1) Become familiar with the requirements for a tactical road march according to FM 55-30 and FM 7-10.

(2) Conduct a reconnaissance of the training area.

(a) Because the BIDS is very dependent upon its communications hardware, if possible conduct a communications exercise to test your ability to communicate en route to the training area.

(b) Conduct a TEWT or terrain walk of the STX area.

(c) During the terrain walk, emphasize making and using strip maps, selecting and reporting passage of movement control points (for example, phase lines [PLs], CPs, and the duties of the quartering/advanced party).

(3) Get a weather forecast for the training days. During weather analysis, emphasize the--

(a) Expected precipitation.

(b) Time of BMNT and EENT.

(c) Expected ambient temperature.

(d) Expected relative humidity.

(4) Conduct a terrain analysis, emphasizing the--

(a) Effects of weather and the terrain on your planned movement.

(b) Location of the platoon CP during the movement.

(c) Requirement to create a template of potential threats and danger areas.

(5) Review the standards for the MTP T&EOs that support this exercise.

(6) Perform leader checks before conducting this STX, to include--

(a) Are platoon personnel to include contractor logistics support trained on vehicle operation, convoy safety, hand-and-arm signals, and roadside emergency procedures?

(b) Have I established an SOP and immediate-action drills for the mission profile?

(c) Are METL task checklists available?

(d) Have we performed before-operations equipment maintenance?

(e) Are PLL and combat loads adequate?

(7) Discuss the duties of the road guides and advanced party.

(a) Reconnoiter the routes and the AA. Make recommendations for changing the routes or AA, if necessary (based upon the ground reconnaissance).

(b) Establish positions for the road guides, and a detailed drop-off and pick-up plan.

(c) Organize the AA or the new position, if applicable. Select general locations for the platoon CP, the observation posts, each vehicle, the major weapon systems, and the communications networks.

(8) Establish security for the march and during halts.

(a) Assign air guards.

(b) Assign sectors of responsibility to vehicle commander during the march.

(c) Orient operators of crew-served weapons on specific sectors of responsibility during the march.

(d) Use the herringbone or coil formation and position observation posts (OPs) during halts.

(e) Reconnoiter ahead at halts (responsibility of the lead element).

(9) Use the following procedures if the march unit is split by enemy actions:

(a) The senior person in each segment of the march unit or BIDS team takes charge and attempts to reestablish and reorganize the march unit.

(b) If contact is lost between elements, the head of column continues on the original route.

(c) The tail of column rallies at the last checkpoint passed and takes the alternate route.

(10) Train soldiers to conduct a tactical road march under limited visibility or NBC conditions.

(a) Reduced interval: the company's SOP shows how to use blackout drive, blackout markers, or infrared chemical lights (chemlights) to determine the proper march interval.

(b) Guides at traffic control points use flashlights: the unit's SOP shows recognition signals.

(c) At halts: vehicles maintain visual contact with the vehicle to their front and maintain 360-degree security. The last vehicle in the movement order provides rear security for the element.

4. Training Enhancers. To conduct this exercise, use the FRAGO in the special situation.

a. After members of the platoon demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leader tasks, you have numerous options for training this STX.

(1) Under baseline conditions—that is, in daylight, with no significant weather phenomena, no biological simulators, no nuclear or chemical threat, no OPFOR, easy terrain, and unlimited logistical support.

(2) With or without OPFOR.

(3) Under varied environmental conditions, such as desert, mountain, or jungle areas; winter zones; or urbanized terrain.

(4) During day and/or night operations. The normal mission profile has the BIDS platoon operating primarily from 2 hours before dark to 2 hours after dawn; however, under the crawl, walk, run training philosophy, it may be necessary to conduct some individual, crew, and unit training in daylight.

b. Tailor the training exercise to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. Given your unit's mission, equipment, level of readiness, and time available, make this MTP fit your situation. Remember to teach, conduct a TEWT, and then execute the training mission. Apply the crawl, walk, run principle to this training, and use common sense. Do not waste critical training resources by increasing the training tempo when the unit is not able to perform the mission in the baseline environment.

c. Conduct this exercise in daylight, and without pressure. Add various threats, to include NBC threat and OPFOR. As soon as possible, begin night and continuous operations, as most threat biological agent employment tactics call for attacking our forces around dawn and dusk. By adding pressure and developing increasing intensity and tempo of operations, you can make this a very difficult exercise. Your options are limited only by your imagination.

d. Work with the division or corps staff and support organizations whenever possible. This develops habitual relationships and enhances realism.

e. Use the tasks listed in chapter 3 to build the MEL for the exercise scenario.

f. During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in paragraph 8 of this STX. When the unit's proficiency meets those standards during the initial phases of training, the unit leadership should build on those standards as the training conditions and environments become more

rigorous. Maintaining proficiency is best accomplished by incorporating this STX as part of an FTX or command post exercise (CPX). Train to the following standards:

(1) March the units across the start point (SP), checkpoint (CP), and release point (RP) at the time specified in the movement order.

(2) March the units close into the AA area at the time specified in the movement order.

(3) Ensure that vehicles do not exceed the catch-up speed.

(4) Maintain distances between vehicles as specified in the march order.

(5) Follow the march route except to react to enemy contact or to bypass obstacles.

(6) Keep air guards up, scanning for aircraft throughout the movement.

(7) Link up with the quartering party or contact point elements without causing the remainder of the column to stop.

(8) At all halts, --

(a) Observe the time constraints as outlined in the march order.

(b) Ensure that the march unit assumes a herringbone or coil formation upon halting.

(c) Conduct crew preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS).

(d) Maintain security with at least one air guard per every vehicle, alert and manning a weapon at all times.

(e) Ensure that vehicle operators maintain visual contact with the vehicle to their front and maintain 360-degree security. The last vehicle in movement order provides rear security for element.

(9) Ensure that elements react to enemy contact as prescribed in the OPORD.

(10) For disabled vehicles, ensure that--

(a) The vehicles are moved off the road before they stop. Immediately establish security around the disabled vehicle. Reestablish communications immediately if disrupted.

(b) The driver attempts to repair vehicle.

(c) The first recovery vehicle to reach a disabled vehicle recovers it, unless orders directing other action are received.

(d) Security is provided for the trail party, especially during recovery operations.

(e) The trail officer notifies the convoy commander of the disabled vehicle and recovers or destroys it, depending on the tactical situation. Destruction of the vehicle is a command decision used as a last resort to prevent capture by the enemy.

(f) The equipment is destroyed by using explosives, direct fire, or fire support after the convoy has cleared the area.

(g) Critical parts are removed, if possible, before destroying.

g. O/Cs must monitor all training actions. They--

(1) Control the tempo of the exercise and function as notional units for reporting or coordination.

(2) Are responsible for injecting incidents, orders, or information as specified in your MEL.

(3) Must be senior trainers, proficient in all aspects of the task and, if applicable, the simulations used in the STX. Simulations and intelligence are vital elements in the unit training process.

(4) Ensure that during the early stages of training, the BIDS platoon members comprehend the tactics and fire planning or biological weapons employment doctrine of a potential adversary.

h. Consider the factors of METT-TC for mission planning.

(1) Mission. How far must we go and why are we moving?

(2) Enemy. What is the likelihood of ground, air, or NBC attack?

(3) Terrain and weather. What routes are available? What is the condition of routes? What effect will weather have on routes?

(4) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and their equipment? (NOTE: You must inspect your soldiers and their equipment before any training. Ensure that your soldiers have all of the items listed on the packing list/load plan. Limit personal items to reduce morale and discipline problems during training.)

(5) Time available. How much time do my soldiers have to prepare? How much time do we have to get to the training site? How much planning time do I have? (NOTE: Apply the one-third/two-third planning time rule here. Use no more than one-third of the total time available for your planning, allowing your soldiers two-thirds of the time available to prepare.)

(6) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

i. Conduct the necessary coordination and modify the plan accordingly.

j. Check load plans and make the necessary modifications. The time to find out that your load plan is inadequate is not during the road march itself. Configure your loads and make a shakedown movement before conducting this STX.

k. Designate a quartering/advanced party. The quartering/advanced party should conduct a route reconnaissance to the training site and area reconnaissance of the training site.

l. Perform before-, during-, and after-operations maintenance.

m. Troop-leading procedures. The platoon leader and subordinate leaders will begin the backwards-planning sequence as they begin the troop-leading process. They will--

(1) Receive and analyze the mission. See paragraphs 5 & 6 of this STX.

(2) Issue a warning order. This must include time and location for issuing the final operations order.

(3) Make a tentative plan. This plan should be based upon METT-TC factors.

(4) Start necessary movement. Dispatch advanced parties or begin other necessary movement (for example, march order platoon vehicles; post road guides).

(5) Reconnoiter. Always conduct a ground reconnaissance of the training area whenever possible.

(6) Complete the plan. This should include a MEL for the exercise.

(7) Issue the complete order. You should use the standard five-paragraph OPORD format.

n. Brief your platoon.

(1) Ensure they understand the training scenario and plan by having them back brief you.

(2) Have team leaders describe their actions, using a terrain map or sand table whenever possible.

(3) Discuss local security requirements and straggler control. Further, discuss risk analysis and safety issues, immediate-action drills (for example, actions upon contact), air guards, weapons control orders, fields of fire, refueling procedures, and control measures.

o. Conduct the road march. Report the arrival and the clearing of the SP. Maintain march intervals, local security, and march speed. Report after crossing the RP.

p. React to situations presented during the movement. Remember, your mission is to move. Anything that prevents you from reaching the RP has stopped or prevented you from accomplishing your mission.

q. Link up with the quartering/advanced party at the RP. Have the vehicles guided into position without stopping.

r. Establish physical security and communications immediately upon closing of the training area.

s. Ensure your O/Cs conduct AARs.

5. General Situation.

a. The company is moving from a base or base cluster to a TAA or between operational areas.

b. Minimum standards consist of arriving at the designated location with your platoon intact. The unit shall cross the SP and close on the RP at the designated times, follow the directed control measures, maintain security throughout the movement, and make reports as required.

6. Special Situation. Train this STX using organic vehicles moving on specified terrain. You may elect to use either a terrain board or sand table to train your soldiers prior to executing this STX as part of an FTX. The BIDS company commander will issue a FRAGO to support the training.

a. To train this STX, use the FRAGO in Figure 4-4.

FRAGMENTARY ORDER

Copy ___ of ___ copies
Issuing headquarters
Place of issue
Date-time group of signature
Message reference number

FRAGO Number: _____

References:

1. SITUATION.

2. MISSION. Platoon (BIDS) conducts a tactical road march at _____ hours to the AA vicinity grid ___, closing on and securing the AA no later than___ hours. Be prepared to continue operations from this AA.

3. EXECUTION.

   a. Concept of operations.

   b. Tasks to subordinate units.

   c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-4. Sample FRAGO for STX A

b. Table 4-8 provides the sequence of events and the estimated time required for specific events in this exercise.

Table 4-8. Sequence of Events and Estimated Time Allocation for STX A

Event	Task	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Plan and Coordinate the Tactical Road March	2
2	Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance (Primary and Alternate Routes)	2
3	Issue an OPORD	0.5
4	Prepare the Platoon for Movement and Deploy the Quartering Party	3
5	Conduct a Tactical Road March	6
6	Brief the Commander and Conduct an AAR	1
	TOTAL TIME:	**14.5 Hours**
Note: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.		

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum trainers and O/Cs. The BIDS company commander trains and evaluates the platoon leader. The platoon leader trains and evaluates the platoon. If available, use additional O/Cs personnel in each BIDS suite to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. Use OPFOR to harass during movement or at halts. Begin with a Level I Rear Area Threat, and build to a Level II Threat. If you use OPFOR, you will require vehicles with radios to transport the OPFOR. O/Cs can serve as umpires if you include the MILES or other casualty assessment systems in the training.

c. Vehicles and communications. Use organic vehicles and equipment or use a terrain board or sand table. If there is not a higher HQ present, you will need one O/C with a radio to function as a reporting activity.

d. Maneuver area. The training area should consist of a road that will allow a tactical march of at least 10 kilometers.

e. Consolidated Support Requirements. This exercise requires the following:

(1) Class III requirements: 50 gallons of JP8 or diesel fuel per vehicle.

(2) Communications and COMSEC requirement.

(a) Ten each training SOIs.

(b) Frequencies: 4 each HF (HI), HF (LO), and FM.

(c) One KYK13 with COMSEC fill (GPS encryption).

(3) Ammunition. Table 4-9 gives ammunition requirements required for this STX.

Table 4-9. Ammunition Requirements for STX A

Ammunition	Quantity
Signal Illumination, Cluster[1, 2]	10 (O/Cs)
Cartridge, Blank 5.56 mm	See STRAC Manual
Cartridge, Blank 7.62 mm	See STRAC Manual
Flare, Surface, Trip	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, Booby Trap[3]	See STRAC Manual
NOTES: **[1]Refer to local SOI or range requirements for colors required for control.** **[2]Ground star: red ground, white ground, green parachute, and red parachute.** **[3]Simulator booby trap: flash, illumination, and whistle.**	

8. Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence. The collective tasks that support this exercise can be found in Chapter 3, Table 3-3.

BIDS PLATOON
STX B

OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA (AA) AND DEFEND A UNIT PERIMETER

1. Objective. This sample STX provides functional training for the unit leadership in exercising command and control responsibilities over subordinate elements. It will provide the platoon leader, platoon sergeant, and other key leaders with training to defend a base by itself or as part of a larger base or base cluster perimeter. It also provides the platoon and team leadership with realistic training in planning, establishing, and directing unit fires in the defense.

2. Interface. This STX is used whenever the unit is required to occupy an AA or when the unit occupies a portion of a larger unit's perimeter. It should be used several times during major FTXs. The mission requires tactical situational awareness, mandating interface with the base cluster commander (usually the commander of the division support command or the forward support battalions). Signal units support the operation, providing mobile subscriber equipment nodes through which the platoon can contact or interface with these elements.

3. Training.

a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in required tasks. Leader training includes, but is not limited to--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and how to implement the unit's SOP.

(2) Unit training meetings that require the leadership to brief and coordinate training areas, movement, logistics, O/Cs, training devices and simulations, and other training resource requirements.

(3) Troop-leading procedures and the military decision-making process.

(4) Planning, preparing for, and executing tactical road marches.

(5) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing NBC hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and defensive positions.

(6) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of the training areas you will use to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations during rehearsals.

(7) Reviewing procedures for preparing fighting positions, range cards, laying mines, call for fire, and reconnaissance and security (R&S) patrols.

b. Tips for training. Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX are:

(1) Familiarize yourself with the requirements for biosurveillance planning and operations according to FM 3-104-4 and TM 3-6665-349-12&P.

(2) Conduct a reconnaissance of the training area.

(a) Because BIDS is very dependent upon its communications hardware, if possible, conduct a communications exercise to test your ability to communicate at the training area.

(b) Conduct a TEWT or terrain walk of the STX area.

(c) During the terrain walk, emphasize making and using strip maps, selecting and reporting passage of movement control points (for example, phase lines (PLs), CPs, and the duties of the quartering/advanced party).

(3) Get a weather forecast for the training days. During weather analysis, emphasize the--

(a) Expected wind speed and direction.

(b) Expected precipitation.

(c) Time of BMNT and EENT.

(d) Expected ambient temperature.

(e) Expected relative humidity.

(4) Conduct a terrain analysis, emphasizing the--

(a) Effects of weather and the terrain on biological cloud travel.

(b) Location of the platoon CP and biosurveillance sites.

(c) Actions to take upon receipt of a biosurveillance alert.

(5) Review the standards for the MTP T&EOs that support this exercise.

(6) Perform leader checks before conducting this STX, to include--

(a) Are platoon personnel to include the contractor logistics support trained in the occupation of an AA and preparation of individual fighting positions?

(b) Have I established an SOP and immediate-action drills for the mission profile?

(c) Are METL task checklists available?

(d) Have we performed before-operations equipment maintenance?

(e) Are ammunition, PLL, and combat loads adequate?

(7) Discuss the duties of the road guides and advanced party.

(a) Reconnoiter the routes to the training area and plan your initial AA. Make recommendations for changing the routes or AA, if necessary (based upon the ground reconnaissance). Review security requirements on the march and during halts. Further, discuss risk analysis and safety issues, immediate-action drills (for example, actions upon contact, air guards, refueling procedures and control measures).

(b) Assemble equipment to include pioneer tools, NBC detection equipment, marking devices, field sanitation equipment, and communications equipment. By the time of the linkup, all necessary setup should be accomplished.

(c) Obtain control of training areas (for example, sign for ranges or open range via the range control radio network or telephone). Secure previously coordinated training area support, as applicable (for example, medics with ambulances).

(d) Establish positions for the road guides and prepare a detailed drop-off and pick-up plan.

(e) Organize the movement into your initial AA. Select general locations for the platoon CP, the observation posts, each vehicle, the major weapon systems, and the communications networks.

4. Training Enhancers. To conduct this exercise, use the FRAGO in the special situation.

a. After members of the platoon demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leader tasks, you have numerous options for training this STX.

(1) Under baseline conditions—that is, in daylight, with no significant weather phenomena, no biological simulators, no nuclear or chemical threat, no OPFOR, easy terrain, and unlimited logistical support.

(2) With the BIDS platoon deployed in an area array.

(3) With the BIDS platoon deployed in a critical node array.

(4) With or without OPFOR.

(5) Under varied environmental conditions, such as desert, mountain, or jungle areas; winter zones; or urbanized terrain.

(6) During day and/or night operations. While the normal mission profile has the BIDS platoon operating primarily from 2 hours before dark to 2 hours after dawn, under the crawl, walk, run training philosophy it may be necessary to conduct some individual, crew, and unit training in daylight.

b. Tailor the training exercise to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. Given your unit's mission, equipment, level of readiness, and time available, make this MTP fit your situation. Remember to teach, conduct a TEWT, and then execute the training mission. Apply the crawl, walk, run principle to this training, and use common sense. Do not waste critical training resources by increasing the training tempo when the unit is not able to perform the mission in the baseline environment.

c. Conduct this exercise in daylight, and without pressure. Add various threats, to include NBC threat and OPFOR. As soon as possible, begin night and continuous operations, as most threat biological agent employment tactics call for attacking our forces around dawn and dusk. By adding pressure and developing increasing intensity and tempo of operations, you can make this a very difficult exercise. Your options are limited only by your imagination.

d. Work with the corps or division support command staff and their assigned support organizations whenever possible.

e. Use the tasks listed in chapter 3 of this STX to build the MEL for the exercise scenario.

f. During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in chapter 3 of this STX. When the unit’s proficiency meets those standards during the initial phases of training, the unit leadership should build on those standards as the training conditions and environments become more rigorous. Maintaining proficiency is best accomplished by incorporating this STX as part of an FTX or CPX. Train to the following standards:

(1) Establish security for the march and during halts.

(a) Assign air guards.

(b) Assign sectors of responsibility to the vehicle commander during the march.

(c) Orient operators of crew-served weapons on specific sectors of responsibility during the march.

(d) Use the herringbone or coil formation and post OPs during halts.

(e) Reconnoiter ahead at halts (responsibility of the lead element).

(2) Use the following procedures if the march unit is split by enemy actions:

(a) The senior person in each segment of the march unit or BIDS team takes charge and attempts to reestablish and reorganize the march unit.

(b) If contact is lost between elements, the head of column continues on the original route.

(c) The tail of column rallies at the last checkpoint passed and takes the alternate route.

(3) Train soldiers to conduct a tactical road march under limited visibility or NBC conditions.

(a) Reduced interval: the company's SOP shows how to use blackout drive, blackout markers, or infrared chemical lights (chemlights) to determine the proper march interval.

(b) Guidance at traffic control points: use flashlights. The unit's SOP shows a recognition signal.

(c) At halts, vehicle operators maintain visual contact with the vehicle to their front and maintain 360-degree security. The last vehicle in the movement order provides rear security for the element.

(d) Establish security on the march and during halts, which consists of assigning air guards, assigning sectors of responsibility for vehicles on the march, orienting weapons crews on sectors of responsibility during the march, and ensuring security during halts--adopting a herringbone or coil formation and posting OPs.

(4) Select the AA. Selection criteria should include--

(a) Military factors of terrain—observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, avenues of approach (OCOKA).

(b) Mobility, countermobility, and survivability factors (for example, ingress/egress, internal lines of communications, passive defense, NBC contamination hazards).

(c) Maneuver factors (for example, interlocking fields of fire, mutual support).

(d) Fire support—what fire controls apply.

(e) Is there space for a helicopter-landing zone (LZ)?

(5) Actions in the AA.

(a) Establish security.

600• Establish primary, alternate, and supplementary positions to cover the entire perimeter. Cover the most dangerous enemy avenues of approach. Maintain the ability to maneuver so as to meet the enemy forces at all points along the perimeter.

- Man OPs.

- Position weapons and prepare fighting positions.
- Prepare range cards and fire plans.
- Assign all soldiers to a fighting position on the perimeter.
- Ensure that soldiers know and use the challenge and password.
- Set up communications between the OPs, the listening posts, and the CP.

(b) Use existing material for cover, concealment, and camouflage.

(c) Establish complementary communications by laying wires and assigning messengers.

(d) React to situations as presented.

(e) Submit required reports, such as the personnel status report, the vehicle and equipment status report, and the supply status and request resupply report.

(f) Perform field sanitation.

(g) Command post and AA security. Ensure that--

- The CP is on defensible terrain.
- Terrain provides the best cover and concealment allowed by radio communications constraints.
- A dismount point is established and manned.
- All vehicles not authorized in the CP area at the dismount point are parked.
- Wire or radio communications with the dismount point are set.
- All vehicles entering the AA as friendly are identified.

(h) Enforce stand-to procedures.

- Always stand-to from 2 hours before until 2 hours after BMNT and EENT.
- Ensure that all soldiers are alert and in defensive positions at stand-to.
- Account for all equipment.
- Reload vehicles, if necessary.
- Man all defensive positions 5 minutes prior to stand-to time.
- Ensure that status reports (to include the sensitive item report) are given by unit leaders prior to stand-to.
- Prepare to start all vehicles simultaneously at stand-to time (start vehicles only on order).

- Check all night vision devices, thermal sights, and batteries for serviceability before evening stand-to.

- Stand-down on order.

(i) Have the orders group plan and prepare for the next mission in the AA, to include--

- Task organization.

- Issue OPORD or FRAGO.

- Loading for combat.

- Perform supply activities to include (as a minimum) resupply of ammunition and POL. Vehicles must have basic loads before combat operations.

- Perform maintenance activities giving priority to maintenance that the unit cannot accomplish during combat support operations.

- Maintain weapons.

- Care for personnel requirements to include Personnel and Administration Center (PAC) activities, medical needs, food, and rest.

- Platoon HQ maintains situation map and continues planning.

g. Observer/controllers must monitor all training actions. They--

(1) Control the tempo of the exercise and function as notional units for reporting or coordination.

(2) Are responsible for injecting incidents, orders, or information as specified in your MEL.

(3) Must be senior trainers, proficient in all aspects of the task and, if applicable, the simulations used in the STX. Simulations and intelligence are vital elements in the unit training process.

(4) Ensure that during the early stages of training, the BIDS platoon leadership comprehend the tactics and fire planning or biological weapons employment doctrine of a potential adversary.

h. Make a plan based upon METT-TC factors.

(1) Mission. What is our assigned defensive position? What are the specified and implied tasks for this defense?

(2) Enemy. What is the likelihood of attack and where, when, how, and with what?

(3) Terrain and weather. What are the military aspects of terrain that may inhibit our ability to defend this position?

(4) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and their equipment? (NOTE: You must inspect your soldiers and their equipment before any training. Ensure that your soldiers have all of the items listed on the packing list/load plan. Limit personal items to reduce morale and discipline problems during training.)

(5) Time available. How much time do my soldiers have to prepare? How much time do we have to get to the training site? How much planning time do I have? (NOTE: Apply the one-third/two-

third planning time rule here. Use no more than one-third of the total time available for your planning, allowing your soldiers two-thirds of the time available to prepare.)

(6) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

i. Conduct the necessary coordination, and modify your plan accordingly.

j. Troop-leading procedures. The platoon leader and subordinate leaders will begin the backwards-planning sequence as they begin the troop-leading process. They will--

(1) Receive and analyze the mission. See paragraphs 5 & 6 of this STX.

(2) Issue a warning order. This must include time and location for issuing the final operations order.

(3) Make a tentative plan. This plan should be based upon METT-TC factors.

(4) Start necessary movement. Dispatch advanced parties or begin other necessary movement (for example, march order platoon vehicles; post road guides).

(5) Reconnoiter. Always conduct a ground reconnaissance of the training area whenever possible.

(6) Complete the plan. This should include a MEL for the exercise.

(7) Issue the complete order. This should use the standard five-paragraph OPORD format.

k. Brief your platoon.

(1) Ensure that they understand the training scenario and plan by having them back brief you.

(2) Have team leaders describe their actions, using a terrain map or sand table whenever possible.

l. Link up with the quartering/advanced party at the designated RP. Have the vehicles guided into position without stopping.

m. Establish physical security and communications immediately upon closing of the training area.

n. React to situations as presented, but remember to focus on the mission. If situations disrupt or prevent you from occupying the designated AA and establishing a defense, the mission has failed.

o. Perform before-, during-, and after-operations maintenance.

p. Ensure that your O/Cs conduct AARs.

5. General Situation.

a. The platoon is moving from a base or base cluster to a TAA. The unit will defend its position or a portion of a larger unit's perimeter. Enemy forces can attack in various strengths depending on the battlefield location.

b. Minimum standards consist of arriving at the designated location with your platoon intact. The unit shall cross the SP and close on the RP at the designated times, follow the directed control measures, maintain security throughout the movement, and make reports as required. Upon closing on the AA, the priority of defensive effort must be to--

(1) Immediately establish a 360-degree defense.

(2) Establish communications with the base or base cluster commander.

(3) Situate crew-served weapons to cover high-speed avenues of approach.

(4) Adjust defensive positions based on the military aspects of terrain, ensuring interlocking fields of fire and mutual support.

(5) Post OPs and immediately establish communications with them.

(6) Prepare range cards and improve defensive positions.

6. Special Situation. Train this STX using organic vehicles and equipment on specified terrain. You may elect to use either on a terrain board or sand table to train your soldiers prior to executing this STX as part of an FTX. The BIDS company commander will issue a FRAGO to support the training.

a. To conduct STX B, use the OPORD in FTX 1, 2, or 3. To train this STX by itself, use the FRAGO in Figure 4-5.

FRAGMENTARY ORDER

Copy ___ of ___ copies
Issuing headquarters
Place of issue
Date-time group of signature
Message reference number

FRAGO Number: _____

References:

1. SITUATION.

2. MISSION. Platoon (BIDS) conducts a tactical road march at _____ hours to AA vicinity ___ ___ closing on and securing the AA no later than _____ hours. Be prepared to continue operations from this AA.

3. EXECUTION.

   a. Concept of operations.

   b. Tasks to subordinate units.

   c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-5. Sample FRAGO for STX B

b. Table 4-10 provides the sequence of events and the estimated time required for specific events in this exercise.

Table 4-10. Sequence of Events and Estimated Time Allocation for STX B

Event	Task	Estimated Time (Hours)
1	Issue a Warning Order to Platoon	0.5
2	Plan and Coordinate the Tactical Road March	1
3	Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance (Primary and Alternate Routes and the AA, if possible) and Complete the Plan	1.5
4	Issue an OPORD	0.5
5	Prepare the Platoon for Movement and Deploy the Quartering Party	2
6	Conduct a Tactical Road March	2
7	Occupy the Unit's AA	0.5
8	Secure and Defend the Unit's Position	2
9	Conduct Platoon Sustainment Operations and Prepare for Future Operations	3
10	Brief the Commander and Conduct an AAR	1
	TOTAL TIME:	**14.0 Hours**
Note: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.		

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum trainers and O/Cs. The BIDS company commander trains and evaluates the platoon leader. The platoon leader trains and evaluates the platoon. If available, use additional O/C personnel at the defensive position to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. Use OPFOR to infiltrate or test the perimeter. Begin with a Level I Rear Area Threat, and build to a Level II Threat. Using OPFOR requires vehicles with radios to transport the OPFOR. O/Cs can serve as umpires if you include the MILES or other casualty assessment systems in the training.

c. Vehicles and communications. Use organic vehicles and equipment or use a terrain board or sand table. If there is not a base or base cluster HQ and fire support present, you will need one O/C with a radio to function as a reporting activity.

d. Maneuver area. The training area, ideally, should be suitable for a platoon defense (about 500 meters x 500 meters). The area must have defensible terrain, provisions for interlocking fires, adequate cover, and traffic ability.

e. Consolidated Support Requirements. This exercise requires the following--

(1) Class III requirements: 50 gallons of JP8 or diesel fuel per vehicle.

(2) Communications/COMSEC requirement.

(a) Ten each training SOIs.

(b) Frequencies: 4 each HF (HI), HF (LO), and FM.

(c) One KYK13 with COMSEC fill (GPS encryption).

(3) Ammunition. Table 4-11 gives ammunition requirements required for this FTX.

Table 4-11. Ammunition Requirements for FTX 2

Ammunition	Quantity
Signal Illumination, Cluster[1, 2]	10 (O/Cs)
Cartridge, Blank 5.56 mm	See STRAC Manual
Cartridge, Blank 7.62 mm	See STRAC Manual
48Flare, Surface, Trip	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, Booby Trap[3]	See STRAC Manual
NOTES: **[1]Refer to local SOI or range requirements for colors required for control.** **[2]Ground star: red ground, white ground, green parachute, and red parachute.** **[3]Simulator booby trap: flash, illumination, and whistle.**	

8. Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence. The collective tasks that support this exercise can be found in Chapter 3, Table 3-3.

BIDS PLATOON
STX C

DEPLOY/REDEPLOY FROM A THEATER OF OPERATIONS

1. Objective. This sample STX provides functional training for the unit leadership to deploy or redeploy from a theater of operations. It also provides key leaders training on selecting an initial biological surveillance site.

2. Interface. This STX is used whenever the unit is to deploy to an overseas theater of operations. It should be used at least once during major FTXs. The mission requires the unit to prepare equipment for rail, air, or ship loading for transport to a theater POE, entry operations at a POD, and selection of the initial biological surveillance site. Signal units support the operation, providing mobile subscriber equipment nodes through which the platoon can contact or interface with these elements.

3. Training.

a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in required tasks. Leader training includes--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and how to implement the unit's SOP.

(2) Unit training meetings that require the leadership to brief and coordinate training areas, movement, logistics, O/Cs, training devices and simulations, and other training resource requirements.

(3) Troop-leading procedures and the military decision-making process.

(4) Planning, preparing for, and executing tactical and nontactical road marches.

(5) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing NBC hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and defensive positions.

(6) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of the training areas you will use to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations during rehearsals.

(7) Reviewing procedures to prepare for overseas movement (POM); rail, air, or ship loading vehicles and equipment; preparing soldiers for deployment; and entry and lodgment operations.

b. Tips for training. Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX are:

(1) Familiarize yourself with the requirements for overseas movement and initial BIDS site selection according to FMs 55-9, 55-65, 3-101-4, and Department of Defense (DOD) 4500.9-R, part III plus the unit movement plan, TPFDL, and other similar mobilization planning documents.

(2) Conduct a reconnaissance of the training area.

(a) In this STX, an adequate training area should include a facility to prepare your equipment for rail, air, or sea deployment.

(b) Because deployment and redeployment exercises can cover large distances, they are very dependent upon communications hardware; if possible, conduct a COMEX to test your ability to communicate at the training area.

(c) Conduct a TEWT or terrain walk of the STX area.

(d) During the terrain walk, emphasize coordination with the POE and POD authorities.

(3) Get a weather forecast for the training days. During weather analysis, emphasize the--

(a) Expected precipitation.

(b) Time of BMNT and EENT.

(c) Expected ambient temperature.

(d) Expected relative humidity.

(e) Impact of weather factors on unit movement.

(f) Historical weather pattern for that time of the year.

(4) Conduct a terrain analysis, emphasizing the--

(a) Effects of terrain on movement, staging, upload, and entry/lodgment operations.

(b) Location of the platoon CP and biosurveillance teams during movement, staging, upload, and entry/lodgment operations.

(c) Effects of terrain on background data, impact of data analysis.

(5) Review the standards for the MTP T&EOs that support this exercise.

(6) Perform leader checks before conducting this STX, to include--

(a) Are platoon personnel to include contractor logistic support trained in occupation of a staging area and preparation for overseas movement?

(b) Have I established an SOP and immediate action drills for the mission profile?

(c) Are METL task checklists available?

(d) Have we performed before-operations equipment maintenance, to include technical inspections of the BIDS, equipment and coordination with the contractor logistic support.

(e) Are ammunition, PLL, and combat loads adequate?

(f) Have we rehearsed safety procedures and conducted a thorough risk analysis?

(7) Discuss the duties of the road guides and advanced party, to include:

(a) Reconnoiter the routes to the training area and plan your initial AA. Make recommendations for changing the routes or AA, if necessary (based upon the ground reconnaissance).

(b) During the reconnaissance, learn from the POE or POD authorities what will be expected of the unit to prepare to load equipment and vehicles. Task-organize the advanced party to prepare the unit to accomplish these tasks.

(c) Assemble the equipment to include pioneer tools, NBC detection equipment, marking devices, field sanitation equipment, and communications equipment. By the time of the linkup, all necessary staging area setup should be accomplished.

(d) Obtain control of training areas (for example, sign for ranges or open range via the range control radio network or telephone). Secure previously coordinated training area support, as applicable (for example, medics with ambulances).

(e) Establish positions for the road guides and prepare a detailed drop-off and pick-up plan.

(8) Organize the movement into your staging area. Select general locations for the platoon CP, the observation posts for physical security, each vehicle, the major items of equipment, and the communications networks.

4. Training Enhancers. To conduct STX C, use the FRAGO in the special situation.

a. After members of the platoon demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leader tasks, you have numerous options for training this STX.

(1) Under baseline conditions—that is, in daylight, with no significant weather phenomena, no biological agent simulants, no nuclear or chemical threat, no OPFOR, easy terrain, and unlimited logistical support.

(2) With the BIDS platoon deployed in an area array upon entry or prior to redeployment from an operational configuration.

(3) With the BIDS platoon deployed in a critical node array upon entry or prior to redeployment from an operational configuration.

(4) With or without OPFOR.

(5) Under varied environmental conditions, such as desert, mountain, or jungle areas; winter zones; or urbanized terrain.

(6) During day and/or night operations. While the normal mission profile has the BIDS platoon operating primarily from 2 hours before dark to 2 hours after dawn, under the crawl, walk, run training philosophy it may be necessary to conduct some individual, crew, and unit training in daylight.

b. Tailor the training exercise to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. Given your unit's mission, equipment, level of readiness, and time available, make this MTP fit your situation. Remember to teach, conduct a TEWT, and then execute the training mission. Apply the crawl, walk, run principle to this training, and use common sense. Do not waste critical training resources by increasing the training tempo when the unit is not able to perform the mission in the baseline environment.

c. Conduct this exercise in daylight, and without pressure. Add various threats, to include NBC threat and OPFOR. As soon as possible, begin night and continuous operations, as most threat biological agent employment tactics call for attacking our forces around dawn and dusk. By adding pressure and developing increasing intensity and tempo of operations, you can make this a very difficult exercise. Your options are limited only by your imagination.

d. Work with the major command (MACOM) corps or division transportation and movement control staffs and their assigned support organizations whenever possible. This develops habitual relationships and enhances realism.

e. Use the tasks listed in chapter 3 of this STX to build the MEL for the exercise scenario.

f. During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in paragraph 8 of this STX. When the unit’s proficiency meets those standards during the initial phases of training, the unit leadership should build on those standards as the training conditions and environments become more

rigorous. Maintaining proficiency is best accomplished by incorporating this STX as part of an FTX or CPX. Train to the following standards:

(1) The platoon leader and designated unit movements noncommissioned officer (UMNCO) supervise preparation for movement to the POE, TAA, or home station.

(a) Coordinate with higher HQ to verify the movement plan.

(b) Compute the travel time and distance from the SP to the RP.

(c) Compare travel times to confirm that the unit will arrive at the POE in advance of the port call message.

(d) Inspect the vehicles and the equipment for proper markings and military shipping labels.

(2) The unit dismantles the current operating site.

(3) The unit prepares the equipment for movement.

(a) Performs before-operations maintenance on all equipment, and contract logistic support performs technical inspection of the BIDS equipment.

(b) Corrects all maintenance deficiencies within the operator's capabilities.

(c) Reports uncorrected deficiencies.

(d) Computes and marks the center of gravity on the vehicle (air movements only).

(e) Places military shipping labels on the vehicles and the equipment according to the movement plan and the UMNCO's instructions.

(4) Conduct ground movement to the POE. Actions at the POE include--

(a) Establish communications with the commander of the Military Traffic Management Command (MTMC) element or the departure airfield control group (DACG) at the POE.

(b) Coordinate time and personnel requirements for the POE support activity.

(c) Post OPs and immediately establish communications with them.

(d) Reduce vehicle height and width as specified by MTMC or the DACG.

(e) Ensure you and MTMC personnel chalk and conduct a joint inspection of all equipment, and the MTMC representative enters the equipment into the manifest prior to loading. Correct any inspection deficiencies.

(f) Maintain chalk integrity during loading. Ensure shoring, floor protection materials, and pallet dunnage, if required, are on hand and used during loading.

(g) Obtain a copy of the manifest and the date and time of arrival at the POE.

(5) Establish security for the march and during halts.

(a) Assign air guards.

(b) Assign sectors of responsibility to the vehicle commander during the march.

(c) Orient operators of crew-served weapons on specific sectors of responsibility during the march.

(d) Use a herringbone or coil formation and post OPs during halts.

(e) Reconnoiter ahead at halts (responsibility of the lead element).

(6) Use the following procedures if the march unit is split by enemy actions:

(a) The senior person in each segment of the march unit or BIDS team takes charge and attempts to reestablish and reorganize the march unit.

(b) If contact is lost between elements, the head of column continues on the original route.

(c) The tail of column rallies at the last checkpoint passed and takes the alternate route.

(7) Train soldiers to conduct a tactical road march under limited visibility or NBC conditions.

(a) Reduced interval: the company's SOP shows how to use blackout drive, blackout markers, or infrared chemlights to determine the proper march interval.

(b) Guidance at traffic control points: use flashlights. The unit's SOP shows a recognition signal.

(c) At halts, vehicles maintain visual contact with the vehicle to their front and maintain 360-degree security. The last vehicle in the movement order provides rear security for the element.

(8) Establish security on the march and during halts, which consists of--

(a) Assigning air guards.

(b) Assigning sectors of responsibility for vehicles on the march.

(c) Orienting weapons crews on sectors of responsibility during the march.

(d) Ensuring security during halts--adopting a herringbone or coil formation and posting OPs.

(9) Select the TAA. Selection criteria should include--

(a) Military factors of terrain — (OCOKA).

(b) Mobility, countermobility, and survivability factors (for example, ingress/egress, internal lines of communications, passive defense, NBC contamination hazards).

(c) Maneuver factors (for example, interlocking fields of fire, mutual support).

(d) Fire support—what fire controls apply.

(e) Is there space for a helicopter LZ?

(10) Actions in the TAA.

(a) Establish security.

(b) Use existing material for cover, concealment, and camouflage.

(c) Establish complementary communications by laying wires and assigning messengers.

(d) React to situations as presented.

(e) Submit required reports.

(f) Perform field sanitation.

(11) Command post and TAA security.

(a) Ensure that the CP is on defensible terrain.

(b) Ensure that the terrain provides the best cover and concealment allowed by radio communications constraints.

(c) Establish and man a dismount point.

(d) Park all vehicles not authorized in the CP area at the dismount point.

(e) Set wire or radio communications with the dismount point.

(f) Identify all vehicles entering the AA as friendly.

(12) Enforce stand-to procedures by unit SOP.

(a) Always stand-to from 2 hours before until 2 hours after BMNT and EENT.

(b) Ensure that all soldiers are alert and in defensive positions at stand-to.

(c) Account for all equipment.

(d) Reload vehicles (if necessary).

(e) Man all defensive positions 5 minutes prior to stand-to time.

(f) Ensure that status reports (to include sensitive item report) are given by unit leaders prior to stand-to.

(g) Prepare to start all vehicles simultaneously at stand-to time (start vehicles only on order).

(h) Check all night vision devices, thermal sights, and batteries for serviceability before evening stand-to.

(I) Stand-down on order.

(13) Have the orders group plan and prepare for the next mission in the TAA, to include--

(a) Task organization.

(b) Issue an OPORD or a FRAGO.

(c) Load for combat.

(d) Perform supply activities to include (as a minimum) resupply of ammunition and POL. The vehicles must have basic loads before combat operations.

(e) Perform maintenance activities giving priority to maintenance that the unit cannot accomplish during combat support operations.

(f) Maintain weapons.

(g) Care for personnel requirements to include PAC activities, medical needs, food, and rest.

(h) Platoon HQ maintains the situation map and continues planning.

g. O/Cs must monitor all training actions. They--

(1) Control the tempo of the exercise and function as notional units for reporting or coordination.

(2) Are responsible for injecting incidents, orders, or information as specified in your MEL.

(3) Must be senior trainers, proficient in all aspects of the task and, if applicable, the simulations used in the STX. Simulations and intelligence are vital elements in the unit training process.

(4) Are very proficient in all aspects of rail, air, or sea deployments. This is critical.

h. Make a plan based upon METT-TC factors.

(1) Mission. What is our assigned transportation mode? What are the specified and implied tasks for this operation?

(2) Enemy. What is the likelihood of opposed entry and where, when, how, and with what?

(3) Terrain and weather. What are the military aspects of terrain that may inhibit our ability to move, deploy/redeploy, and establish biosurveillance operations?

(4) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and their equipment? (NOTE: You must inspect your soldiers and their equipment before any training. Ensure that your soldiers have all of the items listed on the packing list/load plan. Limit personal items to reduce morale and discipline problems during training.)

(5) Time. How much time do my soldiers have to prepare? How much time do we have to get to the training site? How much planning time do I have? (NOTE: Apply the one-third/two-third planning time rule here. Use no more than one-third of the total time available for your planning, allowing your soldiers two-thirds of the time available to prepare.)

i. Conduct the necessary coordination and modify your plan accordingly.

j. Troop-leading procedures. The platoon leader and subordinate leaders will begin the backwards-planning sequence as they begin the troop-leading process. They will--

(1) Receive and analyze the mission. See paragraphs 5 & 6 of this STX.

(2) Issue a warning order. This must include time and location for issuing the final operations order.

(3) Make a tentative plan. This plan should be based upon METT-TC factors.

(4) Start necessary movement. Dispatch advanced parties or begin other necessary movement (for example, march order platoon vehicles; post road guides).

(5) Reconnoiter. Always conduct a ground reconnaissance of the training area whenever possible.

(6) Complete the plan. This should include an MEL for the exercise.

(7) Issue the complete order. This should use the standard five-paragraph OPORD format.

k. Brief your platoon and the contract logistic support elements.

(1) Ensure that they understand the training scenario and plan by having them back brief you.

(2) Have team leader describe their actions, using a terrain map or sand table whenever possible.

(3) Discuss security requirements on the march and during halts. Further, discuss risk analysis and safety issues, immediate action drills (for example, actions upon contact), air guards, weapons control orders, fields of fire, refueling procedures, and control measures.

(4) Discuss the training plan for the platoon during movement (for example, at-sea training plan).

l. Link up with the quartering/advanced party at the designated RP. Have the vehicles guided into chalks and chalk positions without stopping.

m. Establish physical security and communications immediately upon closing of the training area.

n. React to situations as presented, but remember to focus on the mission. If situations disrupt or prevent you from occupying the designated staging area, loading onto a transportation asset, deploying to a theater and establishing biosurveillance, the mission has failed.

o. Perform before-, during-, and after-operations maintenance.

p. Ensure that your O/Cs conduct AARs.

5. General Situation.

a. The platoon received a movement directive to move to a POE for deployment to an outside continental United States (OCONUS) site or for redeployment to continental United States (CONUS) home station. The movement plan specifies routes, logistics, and administrative support requirements and the availability of external support. Upon arrival into an OCONUS theater of operations, the unit must begin biosurveillance as soon as possible.

b. Minimum standards consist of arriving at the designated location with your platoon intact. The unit shall cross the SP and close on the staging area at the POE at the designated times, follow the directed control measures, maintain security in preparation for and throughout the movement, and make reports as required. Upon closing on the staging area, the priority of defensive effort must be--

(1) If this is a tactical road march, immediately establish a 360-degree defense.

(2) Establish communications with the commander of the MTMC element or the DACG at the POE.

(3) Coordinate time and personnel requirements for POE support activity.

(4) Post OPs and immediately establish communications with them.

(5) Reduce vehicle height and width as specified by MTMC or the DACG.

(6) Ensure that you and MTMC personnel chalk and conduct a joint inspection of all equipment, and the MTMC representative enters the equipment into the manifest prior to loading. Correct any inspection deficiencies.

(7) Maintain chalk integrity during loading. Ensure that shoring, floor protection materials, and pallet dunnage, if required, are on hand and used during loading.

(8) Obtain a copy of the manifest and the date and time of arrival at the POE.

6. Special Situation. Train this STX using organic vehicles and equipment on specified terrain. You may elect to use either a terrain board or sand table to train your soldiers prior to executing this STX as part of an FTX. The BIDS company commander will issue a FRAGO to support the training.

a. To conduct STX C, use the OPORD in FTX 1, 2, or 3. To train this STX by itself, use the FRAGO in Figure 4-6.

FRAGMENTARY ORDER

Copy ___ of ___ copies
Issuing headquarters
Place of issue
Date-time group of signature
Message reference number

FRAGO Number: _____

References:

1. SITUATION.

2. MISSION. NLT _____ hours, X platoon (BIDS) conducts a road march to the _____ POE vicinity _____ closing on the staging area NLT _____ hours. Be prepared to begin biosurveillance operations vicinity _____ NLT _____ hours after arrival at the POD.

3. EXECUTION.

   a. Concept of operations.

   b. Tasks to subordinate units.

   c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-6. Sample FRAGO for STX C

b. Table 4-12 provides the sequence of events and the estimated time required for specific events in this exercise.

Table 4-12. Sequence of Events and Estimated Time Allocation for STX C

Event	Task	Estimated Time (Hours)
1	Issue Warning Order to the Platoon	1
2	Plan and Coordinate the Road March	3
3	Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance (Primary and Alternate Routes and the AA, if possible) and Complete the Plan	12
4	Issue an OPORD	1
5	Prepare the Platoon for Overseas Movement and Deploy the Advanced Party	2
6	Conduct a Road March	2
7	Occupy the Unit Staging Area	1
8	Prepare Vehicles and Mission Essential Equipment for Air, Sea, or Rail Shipment	8
9	Conduct the Deployment/Redeployment (Time Should be Transparent to the Exercising Unit)	
10	Receive Vehicles and Mission Essential Equipment from Air, Sea, or Rail Shipment and Prepare for Operations	8
11	Establish Initial Biosurveillance	2
12	Brief the Commander and Conduct an AAR	1
	TOTAL TIME:	**41 Hours**
Note: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.		

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum trainers and O/Cs. The BIDS company and battalion commander trains and evaluates the platoon leader. The platoon leader trains and evaluates the platoon. If available, use additional O/C personnel at the POE and POD to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. Use OPFOR to oppose entry. Using OPFOR requires vehicles with radios to transport the OPFOR. O/Cs can serve as umpires if you include the MILES or other casualty assessment systems in the training.

c. Vehicles and communications. Use organic vehicles and equipment or use a terrain board or sand table. If there is not a marshaling area command group (MACG) present, you will need one O/C with a radio to function as a reporting activity.

d. Maneuver area. In this STX, an adequate training area should include a facility to prepare your equipment for rail, air, or sea deployment. You may need the TASC to construct a mock-up or simulation facility to conduct initial training for safe vehicle and equipment loading. The training area, ideally, should be suitable for a platoon staging area (about 1,000 meters x 250 meters and located within the POE). The training area must have road trafficability, access to the POE, and facilitate local physical security. Following the movement, you will require a training area for the TAA (500 meters x 500 meters should suffice) and an adjacent training area for the BIDS initial biosurveillance sites.

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the following:

(1) Class III requirements: 100 gallons minimum of JP8 or diesel fuel per vehicle if actual road movement and deployment/redeployment is conducted.

(2) Communications/COMSEC requirement.

(a) Ten each training SOIs.

(b) Frequencies: 4 each HF (HI), HF (LO), and FM.

(c) Two KYK13 with COMSEC fill for GPS encryption per platoon.

(3) Ammunition. Table 4-13 gives ammunition requirements required for this STX.

Table 4-13. Ammunition Requirements for STX C

Ammunition	Quantity
Signal Illumination, Cluster[1, 2]	10 (O/Cs)
Cartridge, Blank 5.56 mm	See STRAC Manual
Cartridge, Blank 7.62 mm	See STRAC Manual
Flare, Surface, Trip	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, Booby Trap[3]	See STRAC Manual
NOTES: **[1]Refer to local SOI or range requirements for colors required for control.** **[2]Ground star: red ground, white ground, green parachute, and red parachute.** **[3]Simulator booby trap: flash, illumination, and whistle.**	

(4) Concertina wire for physical security.

(5) Vehicle tie-down materials.

8. Training and Evaluation Outline Sequence. The collective tasks that support this exercise can be found in Chapter 3, Table 3-3.

BIDS PLATOON
STX D

RESPOND TO A BIOLOGICAL SURVEILLANCE (BIOSURVEILLANCE) ALERT

1. Objective. This STX trains the BIDS platoon to collect and analyze a sample in response to an alert. It also provides the platoon leader and other key personnel with practice in operating with corps/division staff and combat units.

2. Interface. This mission requires the platoon leader to interface with the corps/division chemical battle staff and the surgeon when forwarding information from the analysis of BIDS detection, sampling, and presumptive identification. The mission enhances tactical situational awareness within the division, permitting leaders to take appropriate actions in response to potential biological agent hazards. Signal units support the operation, providing mobile subscriber equipment nodes through which the platoon can contact or interface with the division or higher level staffs. Other organizations within the BIDS platoon's base cluster may be required to augment security forces for the BIDS teams.

3. Training.

a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in required tasks. Leader training should include--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and how to implement the unit’s SOPs.

(2) Unit training meetings that require the leadership to brief and coordinate training areas, movement, logistics, O/Cs, training devices and simulations, and other training resource requirements.

(3) Troop-leading procedures and the military decision-making process.

(4) Interpretation of biosurveillance results.

(5) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and defensive positions.

(6) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of the training areas you will use to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations during rehearsals.

b. Tips for training. Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX are:

(1) Familiarize yourself with the requirements for biosurveillance planning and operations according to FM 3-101-4 and TM 3-6665-349-12&P.

(2) Conduct a reconnaissance of the training area.

(a) Because the BIDS is very dependent upon its communications hardware, if possible conduct a communications exercise to test your ability to communicate at the training area.

(b) Conduct a TEWT or terrain walk of the STX area.

(c) During the terrain walk, emphasize making and using strip maps, selecting and reporting passage of movement control points (for example, PLs, CPs, and the duties of the quartering/advanced party).

(3) Get a weather forecast for the training days. During weather analysis, emphasize the--

(a) Expected wind speed and direction.

(b) Expected precipitation.

(c) Time of BMNT and EENT.

(d) Expected ambient temperature.

(e) Expected relative humidity.

(f) Historical weather pattern for that time of year.

(4) Conduct a terrain analysis, emphasizing the--

(a) Effects of weather and the terrain on biological cloud travel.

(b) Location of the platoon CP and biosurveillance sites.

(c) Actions to take upon receipt of a biosurveillance alert.

(5) Review the standards for the MTP T&EOs that support this exercise.

(6) Perform leader checks before conducting this STX, to include--

(a) Are platoon personnel trained on BIDS component operation and systems operation?

(b) Have I established SOPs and immediate-action drills for the mission profile?

(c) Are METL task checklists available?

(d) Have we performed before operations equipment maintenance, and has the contract logistic support performed technical inspections of the BIDS equipment?

(e) Are PLL and combat loads adequate?

4. Training Enhancers. To conduct this exercise, use the FRAGO in the special situation.

a. After members of the platoon demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leader tasks, you have numerous options for training this STX.

(1) Under baseline conditions—that is, in daylight, with no significant weather phenomena, no biological simulators, no nuclear or chemical threat, no OPFOR, easy terrain, and unlimited logistical support.

(2) With the BIDS platoon deployed in an area array.

(3) With the BIDS platoon deployed in a critical node array.

(4) With or without OPFOR.

(5) Under varied environmental conditions, such as desert, mountain, or jungle areas; winter zones; or urbanized areas.

(6) During day and/or night operations. While the normal mission profile has the BIDS platoon operating primarily from 2 hours before dark to 2 hours after dawn, under the crawl, walk, run training philosophy it may be necessary to conduct some individual, crew, and unit training in daylight.

b. Tailor the training exercise to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. Given your unit's mission, equipment, level of readiness, and time available, make this MTP fit your situation. Remember to teach, conduct a TEWT, and then execute the training mission. Apply the crawl, walk, run principle to this training, and use common sense. Do not waste critical training resources by increasing the training tempo when the unit is not able to perform the mission in the baseline environment.

c. Conduct this exercise with biological threat, in daylight, and without pressure. Add various threats, to include OPFOR. As soon as possible, begin night and continuous operations, as most threat biological agent employment tactics call for attacking our forces around dawn and dusk. By adding pressure and developing increasing intensity and tempo of operations, you can make this a very difficult exercise. Your options are limited only by your imagination.

d. Work with the division or corps staff and support organizations whenever possible. This develops habitual relationships and enhances realism.

e. Use the tasks listed in chapter 3 to build the MEL for the exercise scenario.

f. During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in chapter 3 of this STX. When the unit's proficiency meets those standards during the initial phases of training, the unit leadership should build on those standards as the training conditions and environments become more rigorous. Maintaining proficiency is best accomplished by incorporating this STX as part of an FTX or a CPX.

g. O/Cs must monitor all training actions. They--

(1) Control the tempo of the exercise and function as notional units for reporting or coordination.

(2) Are responsible for injecting incidents, orders, or information as specified in your MEL.

(3) Must be senior trainers, proficient in all aspects of the task and, if applicable, the simulations used in the STX. Simulations and intelligence are vital elements in the unit training process.

(4) Ensure that during the early stages of training, the BIDS platoon members comprehend the tactics and fire planning or biological weapons employment doctrine of a potential adversary.

h. Make a plan based upon METT-TC factors.

(1) Mission. Are we part of a joint or combined force mission? Are we conducting surveillance of critical nodes or an area?

(2) Enemy. What is the likelihood of attack and where, when, how, and with what?

(3) Terrain and weather. What are the military aspects of the terrain and weather that may inhibit our ability to conduct surveillance or enhance the enemy's ability to disperse the agent of biological origin?

(4) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and their equipment? (NOTE: You must inspect your soldiers and their equipment before any training. Ensure that your soldiers have all of the items listed on the packing list/load plan. Limit personal items to reduce morale and discipline problems during training.)

(5) Time available. How much time do my soldiers have to prepare? How much time do we have to get to the training site? How much planning time do I have? (NOTE: Apply the one-third/two-third planning time rule here. Use no more than one-third of the total time available for your planning, allowing your soldiers two-thirds of the time available to prepare.)

(6) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

x5760 i. Conduct the necessary coordination and modify your plan accordingly.

j. Troop-leading procedures. The platoon leader and subordinate leaders will begin the backwards-planning sequence as they begin the troop-leading process. They will--

(1) Receive and analyze the mission. See paragraphs 5 and 6 of this STX.

(2) Issue a warning order. This must include time and location for issuing the final OPORD.

(3) Make a tentative plan. This plan should be based upon METT-TC factors.

(4) Start necessary movement. Dispatch advanced parties or begin other necessary movement (for example, march order platoon vehicles; post road guides).

(5) Reconnoiter. Always conduct a ground reconnaissance of the training area whenever possible.

(6) Complete the plan. This should include an MEL for the exercise.

(7) Issue the complete order. This should use the standard five-paragraph OPORD format.

k. Brief your platoon.

(1) Ensure that they understand the training scenario and plan by having them back brief you.

(2) Have team leaders describe their actions, using a terrain map or sand table whenever possible.

(3) Discuss local security requirements and rotation of teams into the BIDS. Discuss risk analysis and safety issues, immediate-action drills (for example, actions upon contact), air guards, weapons control orders, fields of fire, refueling procedures, and control measures.

l. Designate a quartering/advanced party. The quartering/advanced party should conduct a route reconnaissance to the training site and area reconnaissance of the training site.

m. Link up with the quartering/advanced party at the RP. Have the vehicles guided into position without stopping.

n. Establish physical security and communications immediately upon closing of the training area.

o. React to situations as presented, but remember to focus on the mission. If situations disrupt or prevent your biosurveillance operation, the mission has failed.

p. Perform before-, during-, and after-operations maintenance.

q. Ensure that your O/Cs conduct AARs.

5. General Situation.

a. This platoon is in support of a corps, conducting biological surveillance (biosurveillance) operations within a division area of operations.

b. Minimum standards consist of correctly detecting a simulated biological aerosol, identifying simulated biological agents, and interpreting biosurveillance results.

6. Special Situation. This STX may be conducted in its entirety from within a BIDS system or BIDS simulator. Displacement is not required if biological agent simulants (bacillus globigii) or software-based simulation initiates a response to a biosurveillance alert. The BIDS company commander will issue a FRAGO to support the training.

a. To conduct STX D, use the OPORD in FTX 1 or 2. To train this STX by itself, use the FRAGO in Figure 4-7.

FRAGMENTARY ORDER

Copy ___ of ___ copies
Issuing headquarters
Place of issue
Date-time group of signature
Message reference number

FRAGO Number: _____

References:

1. SITUATION.

2. MISSION. Platoon (BIDS), establishes biosurveillance sites vicinity (provide the grid coordinates or provide an operations overlay with BIDS team biosurveillance sites identified) and conducts biosurveillance operations not later than (DTG) to support corps. Be prepared to displace and establish supplementary biosurveillance sites, on order.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of operations.

b. Tasks to subordinate units.

c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-7. Sample FRAGO for STX D

b. Table 4-14 provides the sequence of events and the estimated time required for specific events in this exercise.

Table 4-14. Sequence of Events and the Estimated Time Allocation for STX D

Event	Task	Estimated Time (Hours)
1	Plan and Coordinate the Biosurveillance Operation	2
2	Conduct Leader's Reconnaissance (Primary and Alternate Routes) and Select Biosurveillance Sites	2
3	Issue OPORD	0.5
4	Prepare Platoon for Movement and Deploy Quartering Party	3
5	Conduct a Tactical Road March and Occupy Biosurveillance Sites	2
6	Conduct Biosurveillance (Background and Initiate Normal Operations)	2
7	Detect Biological Aerosols	1
8	Interpret Biosurveillance Results	0.5
9	Brief Commander and Conduct AAR	1
	TOTAL TIME: **14 Hours**	
Note: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.		

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum trainers and O/Cs. The BIDS company commander trains and evaluates the platoon leader. The platoon leader trains and evaluates the platoon. If available, use additional O/Cs personnel in each BIDS suite to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. Use OPFOR to harass during biosurveillance operations. Begin with a Level I Rear Area Threat, and build to a Level II Threat. If you use OPFOR, you will require vehicles with radios to transport the OPFOR. O/Cs can serve as umpires if you include the MILES or other casualty assessment systems in the training.

c. Vehicles and communications. Use organic vehicles and equipment or the BIDS simulation facility. If there is not a higher HQ present, you will need one O/C with a radio to function as a reporting activity.

d. Maneuver area. The BIDS requires a very large training area only if the platoon leader chooses to train in full mission profile (that is, ten kilometer dispersal between biosurveillance sites). The area required for the individual biosurveillance sites should have little overhead obstructions to interfere with erection of the sky wave antenna or camouflage netting.

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the following:

(1) Class III requirements.

(2) Diesel: 50 gallons per vehicle and 10 to 50 gallons per generator.

(3) Motor oil: 1 quart per vehicle or generator.

(4) Communications and COMSEC requirement.

(a) Ten training SOIs.

(b) Frequencies: 4 HF (HI), HF (LO), and FM.

(c) One KYK13 with COMSEC fill (GPS encryption).

(d) Biological agent simulants.

(5) Ammunition. Table 4-15 gives ammunition requirements required for this STX.

Table 4-15. Ammunition Requirements for STX D

Ammunition	Quantity
Signal Illumination, Cluster[1, 2]	10 (O/Cs)
Cartridge, Blank 5.56 mm	See STRAC Manual
Cartridge, Blank 7.62 mm	See STRAC Manual
Flare, Surface, Trip	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, Booby Trap[3]	See STRAC Manual
NOTES: **[1]Refer to local SOI or range requirements for colors required for control.** **[2]Ground star: red ground, white ground, green parachute, and red parachute.** **[3]Simulator booby trap: flash, illumination, and whistle.**	

8. Training and Evaluation Outlines. The collective tasks that support this exercise can be found in Chapter 3, Table 3-2.

BIDS PLATOON
STX E

OCCUPY/DISPLACE FROM A BIOLOGICAL SURVEILLANCE (BIOSURVEILLANCE) SITE

1. Objective. This STX provides functional training for the unit's leadership in exercising command and control responsibilities over subordinate elements. It will provide the platoon leader, platoon sergeant, and other key leaders with training to occupy and set up a biosurveillance site, then strike the site and move to a new site. It also provides the platoon and team leadership with realistic training in planning, establishing, and directing unit movement.

2. Interface. This STX is used whenever the unit is required to occupy a biosurveillance site or move from an existing biosurveillance position to a new one. It should be used several times during major FTXs. The mission requires tactical situational awareness, mandating interface with the base cluster commander (usually the commander of the division support command or the forward support battalions). Signal units support the operation, providing mobile subscriber equipment nodes through which the platoon can contact or interface with these elements.

3. Training.

a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in required tasks. Leader training includes--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and how to implement the unit's SOP.

(2) Unit training meetings that require the leadership to brief and coordinate training areas, movement, logistics, O/Cs, training devices and simulations, and other training resource requirements.

(3) Troop-leading procedures and the military decision-making process.

(4) Planning, preparing for, and executing tactical road marches.

(5) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing NBC hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and defensive positions.

(6) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of the training areas you will use to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations during rehearsals.

(7) Reviewing procedures for preparing fighting positions, range cards, laying mines, call for fire and set-up the BIDS.

b. Tips for training. Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX are:

(1) Familiarize yourself with the requirements for biosurveillance planning and operations according to FM 3-104-4 and TM 3-6665-349-12&P.

(2) Conduct a reconnaissance of the training area.

(a) Because the BIDS is very dependent upon its communications hardware, if possible, conduct a COMEX to test your ability to communicate at the training area.

(b) Conduct a TEWT or terrain walk of the STX area.

(c) During the terrain walk, emphasize making and using strip maps, selecting and reporting passage of movement control points (for example, PLs, CPs, and the duties of the quartering/advanced party).

(3) Get a weather forecast for the training days. During weather analysis, emphasize the--

(a) Expected wind speed and direction.

(b) Expected precipitation.

(c) Time of BMNT and EENT.

(d) Expected ambient temperature.

(e) Expected relative humidity.

(4) Conduct a terrain analysis, emphasizing the--

(a) Effects of weather and the terrain on biological cloud travel.

(b) Location of the platoon CP and biosurveillance sites.

(c) Actions to take upon receipt of a biosurveillance alert.

(5) Review the standards for the MTP T&EOs that support this exercise.

(6) Perform leader checks before conducting this STX, to include--

(a) Are platoon personnel trained in occupation BIDS site?

(b) Are platoon personnel trained to displace from a BIDS site

(c) Have I established an SOP and immediate-action drills for the mission profile?

(d) Are METL task checklists available?

(e) Have we performed before-operations equipment maintenance?

(f) Are ammunition, PLL, and combat loads adequate?

(7) Discuss the duties of the road guides and advanced party.

(a) Reconnoiter the routes to the training area and plan your initial AA. Make recommendations for changing the routes or AA, if necessary (based upon the ground reconnaissance).

(b) Assemble the equipment to include pioneer tools, NBC detection equipment, marking devices, field sanitation equipment, and communications equipment. By the time of the linkup, all necessary setup should be accomplished.

(c) Obtain control of the training areas (for example, sign for ranges or open range via the range control radio network or telephone). Secure previously coordinated training area support, as applicable (for example, medics with ambulances).

(d) Establish positions for the road guides and prepare a detailed drop-off and pick-up plan.

(e) Organize the movement into your initial AA. Select general locations for the platoon CP, the observation posts, each vehicle, the major weapon systems, and the communications networks.

4. Training Enhancers. To conduct STX E, use the FRAGO in the special situation.

a. After members of the platoon demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leader tasks, you have numerous options for training this STX.

(1) Under baseline conditions—that is, in daylight, with no significant weather phenomena, no biological simulators, no nuclear or chemical threat, no OPFOR, easy terrain, and unlimited logistical support, and biological agent simulants.

(2) With the BIDS platoon deployed in an area array.

(3) With the BIDS platoon deployed in a critical node array.

(4) With or without OPFOR.

(5) Under varied environmental conditions, such as desert, mountain, or jungle areas; winter zones; or urbanized terrain.

(6) During day and/or night operations. While the normal mission profile has the BIDS platoon operating primarily from 2 hours before dark to 2 hours after dawn, under the crawl, walk, run training philosophy it may be necessary to conduct some individual, crew, and unit training in daylight.

b. Tailor the training exercise to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. Given your unit's mission, equipment, level of readiness, and time available, make this MTP fit your situation. Remember to teach, conduct a TEWT, and then execute the training mission. Apply the crawl, walk, run principle to this training, and use common sense. Do not waste critical training resources by increasing the training tempo when the unit is not able to perform the mission in the baseline environment.

c. Conduct this exercise in daylight, and without pressure. Add various threats, to include NBC threat and OPFOR. As soon as possible, begin night and continuous operations, as most threat biological agent employment tactics call for attacking our forces around dawn and dusk. By adding pressure and developing increasing intensity and tempo of operations, you can make this a very difficult exercise. Your options are limited only by your imagination.

d. Work with the corps or division support command staff and their assigned support organizations whenever possible. This develops habitual relationships and enhances realism.

e. Use the tasks listed in chapter 3 of this STX to build the MEL for the exercise scenario.

f. During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in chapter 3 of this STX. When the unit's proficiency meets those standards during the initial phases of training, the unit leadership should build on those standards as the training conditions and environments become more rigorous. Maintaining proficiency is best accomplished by incorporating this STX as part of an FTX or a CPX.

g. O/Cs must monitor all training actions. They--

(1) Control the tempo of the exercise and function as notional units for reporting or coordination.

(2) Are responsible for injecting incidents, orders, or information as specified in your MEL.

(3) Must be senior trainers, proficient in all aspects of the task and, if applicable, the simulations used in the STX. Simulations and intelligence are vital elements in the unit training process.

(4) Ensure that during the early stages of training, the BIDS platoon members must comprehend the tactics and fire planning or biological weapons employment doctrine of a potential adversary.

h. Make a plan based upon METT-TC factors.

(1) Mission. What is our assigned defensive position? What are the specified and implied tasks for this defense?

(2) Enemy. What is the likelihood of attack, and where, when, how, and with what?

(3) Terrain and weather. What are the military aspects of terrain that may inhibit our ability to defend this position?

(4) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and their equipment? (NOTE: You must inspect your soldiers and their equipment before any training. Ensure that your soldiers have all of the items listed on the packing list/load plan. Limit personal items to reduce morale and discipline problems during training.)

(5) Time available. How much time do my soldiers have to prepare? How much time do we have to get to the training site? How much planning time do I have? (NOTE: Apply the one-third/two-third planning time rule here. Use no more than one-third of the total time available for your planning, allowing your soldiers two-thirds of the time available to prepare.)

(6) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

i. Conduct the necessary coordination and modify your plan accordingly.

j. Troop-leading procedures. The platoon leader and subordinate leaders will begin the backwards-planning sequence as they begin the troop-leading process. They will--

(1) Receive and analyze the mission. See paragraphs 5 and 6 of this STX.

(2) Issue a warning order. This must include time and location for issuing the final operations order.

(3) Make a tentative plan. This plan should be based upon METT-TC factors.

(4) Start necessary movement. Dispatch advanced parties or begin other necessary movement (for example, march order platoon vehicles; post road guides).

(5) Reconnoiter. Always conduct a ground reconnaissance of the training area whenever possible.

(6) Complete the plan. This should include a MEL for the exercise.

(7) Issue the complete order. This should use the standard five-paragraph OPORD format.

k. Brief your platoon.

(1) Ensure that they understand the training scenario and plan by having them back brief you.

(2) Have team leaders describe their actions, using a terrain map or sand table whenever possible.

(3) Discuss security requirements on the march and during halts. Further, discuss risk analysis and safety issues, immediate action drills (for example, actions upon contact), air guards, weapons control orders, fields of fire, refueling procedures, and control measures.

l. Link up with the quartering/advanced party at the designated RP. Have the vehicles guided into position without stopping.

m. Establish physical security and communications immediately upon closing of the training area.

n. React to situations as presented, but remember to focus on the mission. If situations disrupt or prevent you from occupying the designated AA and establishing a defense, the mission has failed.

o. Perform before-, during-, and after-operations maintenance.

p. Ensure your O/Cs conduct AARs.

5. General Situation.

a. The platoon is moving from an AA to a biosurveillance site or from an existing biosurveillance site to a new site. The unit will occupy the BIDS site, establish communications, document biological background, and begin biosurveillance operations.

b. Minimum standards consist of arriving at the designated location with your platoon intact. The unit shall cross the SP and close on the RP at the designated times, follow the directed control measures, maintain security throughout the movement, and make reports as required. Upon closing on the biosurveillance position, the priority of effort must be to--

(1) Immediately establish a 360-degree defense.

(2) Establish communications with the base or base cluster commander.

(3) Establish communications with BIDS company commander.

(4) Set up the BIDS, then prepare the BIDS for operations.

(5) Document biological background.

(6) Begin biosurveillance operations.

(7) Establish communication with the contractor logistic support team, Technical Escort, and Theater Army Medical Lab.

6. Special Situation. Train this STX using organic vehicles and equipment on specified terrain. You may elect to use either a terrain board or sand table to train your soldiers prior to executing this STX as part of an FTX. The BIDS company commander will issue a FRAGO to support the training.

a. To conduct STX E, use the OPORD in FTX 1, 2, or 3. To train this STX by itself, use the FRAGO in Figure 4-8.

FRAGMENTARY ORDER

Copy ___ of ___ copies
Issuing headquarters
Place of issue
Date-time group of signature
Message reference number

FRAGO Number: _____

References:

1. SITUATION.

2. MISSION. Platoon (BIDS) conducts a tactical road march at _____ hours from the AA to biosurveillance positions vicinity (see overlay), closing on and beginning biosurveillance ____ NLT _____ hours. Be prepared to continue operations from these positions. Be prepared to strike the BIDS and relocate to alternate biosurveillance positions.

3. EXECUTION.

   a. Concept of operations.

   b. Tasks to subordinate units.

   c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-8. Sample FRAGO for STX E

b. Table 4-16 provides the sequence of events and the estimated time required for specific events in this exercise.

Table 4-16. Sequence of Events and Estimated Time Allocation for STX E

Event	Task	Estimated Time (Hours)
1	Issue a Warning Order to the Platoon	0.5
2	Plan and Coordinate the Tactical Road March	1
3	Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance (Primary and Alternate Routes and the AA, if possible) and Complete the Plan	1.5
4	Issue an OPORD	0.5
5	Prepare the Platoon for Movement	2
6	Conduct a Tactical Road March	2
7	Occupy Biosurveillance Positions	0.5
8	Secure and Defend the Unit's Position	0.5
9	Prepare for Operations	0.5
10	Document Biological Background	0.5
11	Begin Biosurveillance Operations	0.5
12	Prepare for Movement	1
13	Brief the Commander and Conduct an AAR	1
	TOTAL TIME:	12 Hours
Note: Units train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will vary based on METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.		

7. Support Requirements.

a. Minimum trainers and O/Cs. The BIDS company or battalion commander trains and evaluates the platoon leader. The platoon leader trains and evaluates the team. If available, use additional O/C personnel at the defensive position to provide additional feedback.

b. Opposing forces. Use OPFOR to infiltrate or test the perimeter. Do not exceed a Level I Rear Area Threat. Using OPFOR requires vehicles with radios to transport the OPFOR. O/Cs can serve as umpires if you include the MILES or other casualty assessment systems in the training.

c. Vehicles and communications. Use organic vehicles and equipment or use a terrain board or sand table. If there is not a base or base cluster headquarters and fire support present, you will need one O/C with a radio to function as a reporting activity.

d. Maneuver area. The training area for each BIDS position, ideally, should be suitable for a platoon defense (about 500 meters x 500 meters). The area must have defensible terrain, provisions for interlocking fires, adequate cover, and trafficability.

e. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the following:

(1) Class III requirements: 50 gallons of JP8 or diesel fuel per vehicle.

(2) Communications/COMSEC requirement.

(a) Ten each training SOIs.

(b) Frequencies: 4 each HF (HI), HF (LO), and FM.

(c) One KYK13 with COMSEC fill (GPS encryption).

(3) Ammunition. Table 4-17 gives ammunition requirements required for this STX.

Table 4-17. Ammunition Requirements for STX E

Ammunition	Quantity
Signal Illumination, Cluster[1, 2]	10 (O/Cs)
Cartridge, Blank 5.56 mm	See STRAC Manual
Cartridge, Blank 7.62 mm	See STRAC Manual
Flare, Surface, Trip	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, Booby Trap[3]	See STRAC Manual

NOTES:
[1]Refer to local SOI or range requirements for colors required for control.
[2]Ground star: red ground, white ground, green parachute, and red parachute.
[3]Simulator booby trap: flash, illumination, and whistle.

8. Training and Evaluation Outlines. The collective tasks that support this exercise can be found in Chapter 3, Table 3-2.

BIDS PLATOON
STX F

EVACUATE A BIOLOGICAL SAMPLE

1. Objective. This sample STX trains the BIDS platoon to work together to provide a biological agent sample for definitive laboratory confirmation and study of the agent's characteristics.

2. Interface. This mission requires the platoon to interface with the Theater Army Medical Lab, Technical Escort, the Intelligence Directorate (J2), the Operations Directorate (J3) and the Chemical and Biological Defense Command (CBDCOM). The mission enhances tactical situational awareness within the corps, permitting leaders to take appropriate actions in response to potential biological agent hazards. Signal units support the operation, providing mobile subscriber equipment nodes through which the platoon can contact or interface with the division or higher level staffs. Other organizations within the BIDS platoon's base cluster may be required to augment security forces for the BIDS teams.

3. Training. This STX is executed in a garrison or field environment under various conditions.

a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in required tasks. Leader training includes--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and how to implement the unit’s SOP.

(2) Unit training meetings that require the leadership to brief and coordinate training areas, movement, logistics, O/Cs, training devices and simulations, and other training resource requirements.

(3) Troop-leading procedures and the military decision-making process.

(4) Interpreting biosurveillance results.

(5) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and defensive positions.

(6) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of the training areas you will use to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations during rehearsals.

b. Tips for training. Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX are:

(1) Record data during the monitoring phase on both (that is, high-volume aerodynamic particle sizer (HVAPS) and the (UVAPS) (ultra violet aerodynamic particle sizer).

(2) Operate the BIDS to ensure that all pertinent information is available for later analysis.

(3) Collect background information and samples according to standard protocol. Document, establish chain-of-custody, and store samples under carefully controlled conditions.

(4) Transported and transferred in such a manner that the legal chain-of-custody is maintained on the sample and its supporting documentation.

(5) Conduct a reconnaissance of the training area.

(a) Because the BIDS is very dependent upon its communications hardware, if possible, conduct a communications exercise to test your ability to communicate at the training area.

(b) Conduct a TEWT or terrain walk of the STX area.

(c) During the terrain walk, emphasize making and using strip maps, selecting and reporting passage of movement control points (for example, PLs, CPs, and the duties of the quartering/advanced party).

(6) Get a weather forecast for the training days. During weather analysis, emphasize the--

(a) Expected wind speed and direction.

(b) Expected precipitation.

(c) Time to BMNT and EENT.

(d) Expected ambient temperature.

(e) Expected relative humidity.

(f) Historical weather pattern for that time of year.

(7) Conduct a terrain analysis, emphasizing the--

(a) Effects of weather and terrain on biological cloud travel.

(b) Location of the platoon CP and biosurveillance sites.

(c) Actions to take upon receipt of a biosurveillance alert.

(8) Review the standards for the MTP T&EOs that support this exercise.

(9) Perform leader checks before conducting this STX, to include--

(a) Are platoon personnel trained on BIDS component operations and systems operation, and sample evacuation procedures?

(b) Have I established SOPs and immediate-action drills for the mission profile?

(c) Are METL task checklists available?

(d) Have we performed before-operations equipment maintenance, contract logistic support to include technical inspections of the BIDS equipment?

(e) Are PLL and combat loads adequate?

4. Training Enhancers. To conduct STX F, use the FRAGO in the special situation.

a. After unit members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leader tasks, you then train the STX under several options.

(1) Under baseline conditions—that is, in daylight, with no significant weather phenomena, no biological agent simulants, no nuclear or chemical threat, no OPFOR, easy terrain, and unlimited logistical support.

(2) With the BIDS platoon deployed in an area array.

(3) With the BIDS platoon deployed in a critical node array.

(4) With or without OPFOR.

(5) Under varied environmental conditions, such as desert, mountain, or jungle areas; winter zones; or urbanized terrain.

(6) During day and/or night operations. While the normal mission profile has the BIDS platoon operating primarily from 2 hours before dark to 2 hours after dawn, under the crawl, walk, run training philosophy it may be necessary to conduct some individual, crew, and unit training in daylight.

b. Tailor the training exercise to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. Given your unit's mission, equipment, level of readiness, and time available, make this MTP fit your situation. Remember to teach, conduct a TEWT, and then execute the training mission. Apply the crawl, walk, run principle to this training, and use common sense. Do not waste critical training resources by increasing the training tempo when the unit is not able to perform the mission in the baseline environment.

c. Conduct this exercise with biological threat, in daylight, and without pressure. Add various threats, to include OPFOR. As soon as possible, begin night and continuous operations, as most threat biological agent employment tactics call for attacking our forces around dawn and dusk. By adding pressure and developing increasing intensity and tempo of operations, you can make this a very difficult exercise. Your options are limited only by your imagination.

d. Work with the division or corps staff and support organizations whenever possible. This develops habitual relationships and enhances realism.

e. Use the tasks listed in chapter 3 of this STX to build the MEL for the exercise scenario.

f. During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in paragraph 5 and 6 of this STX. When the unit's proficiency meets those standards during the initial phases of training, the unit leadership should build on those standards as the training conditions and environments become more rigorous. Maintaining proficiency is best accomplished by incorporating this STX as part of a FTX or CPX.

g. O/Cs must monitor all training actions. They--

(1) Control the tempo of the exercise and function as notional units for reporting or coordination.

(2) Are responsible for injecting incidents, orders, or information as specified in your MEL; and must also be familiar with BIDS team interaction with external agencies such as Foreign Material Intelligence Battalion (FMIB) and a technical escort.

(3) Must be senior trainers, proficient in all aspects of the task and, if applicable, the simulations used in the STX. Simulations and intelligence are vital elements in the unit training process.

(4) Ensure that during the early stages of training, the BIDS platoon members must comprehend the tactics and fire planning or biological weapons employment doctrine of a potential adversary.

h. Make a plan based upon METT-TC factors.

(1) Mission. Document the presence of ABO origin or endemic biological hazards.

(2) Enemy. What is the likelihood of attack, and where, when, how, and with what?

(3) Terrain and weather. What are the military aspects of the terrain and weather that may inhibit our ability to conduct surveillance or enhance the enemy's ability to disperse the ABO?

(4) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and their equipment? (NOTE: You must inspect your soldiers and their equipment before any training. Ensure that your soldiers have all of the items listed on the packing list/load plan. Limit personal items to reduce morale and discipline problems during training).

(5) Time available. How much time do my soldiers have to prepare? How much time do we have to get to the training site? How much planning time do I have? (NOTE: Apply the one-third/two-third planning time rule here. Use no more than one-third of the total time available for your planning, allowing your soldiers two-thirds of the time available to prepare.)

(6) Civilian consideration. What is the civilian population in the area?

i. Conduct the necessary coordination and modify your plan accordingly.

j. Troop-leading procedures. The platoon leader and subordinate leaders will begin the backwards-planning sequence as they begin the troop-leading process. They will--

(1) Receive and analyze the mission. See paragraph 5 and 6 of this STX.

(2) Issue a warning order. This must include time and location for issuing the final OPORD.

(3) Make a tentative plan. This plan should be based upon METT-TC factors, and will include various options on how to evacuate the sample.

(4) Prepare for movement. Identify the teams that will evacuate the sample and potential routes.

(5) Reconnoiter. Always conduct a map reconnaissance of the training area for the sample evacuation whenever possible.

(6) Complete the plan. This should include a MEL for the exercise.

(7) Issue the complete order. This should use the standard five-paragraph operations order format.

k. Brief your platoon.

(1) Ensure that they understand the training scenario and plan by having them back brief you.

(2) Have team leaders describe their actions, using a terrain map or sand table whenever possible.

(3) Discuss local security requirements and rotation of teams into the BIDS. Discuss risk analysis and safety issues, immediate-action drills (for example, actions upon contact), air guards, weapons control orders, fields of fire, refueling procedures, and control measures.

l. Designate a quartering/advanced party. The quartering/advanced party should conduct a route reconnaissance to the training site and area reconnaissance of the training site.

m. Link up with the quartering/advanced party at the RP. Have the vehicles guided into position without stopping.

n. Establish physical security and communications immediately upon closing of the training area.

o. React to situations as presented, but remember to focus on the mission. If situations disrupt or prevent your sample evacuation operation, the mission has failed.

p. Perform before-, during-, and after-operations maintenance.

q. Ensure that your O/Cs conduct AARs.

5. General Situation.

a. This platoon or company (-) is in support of corps, conducting biosurveillance operations within a division area of operations.

b. Minimum standards consist of proper sample control and evacuation.

(1) Whenever samples are handed over from one unit to another, a chain of custody control must occur. All sample transfers or custody changes, from person to person, are to be documented on the Materiel Courier Receipt, DD Form 1911.

(2) A qualified escort must accompany the suspected sample during the entire evacuation process to ensure safety and to maintain chain of custody. The sample goes to the theater chemical and biological sample collection point.

(3) The BIDS support team will return to their BIDS site immediately after leaving the sample transfer point.

(4) Time limits are required to ensure the integrity of the biological samples. Any delay beyond 24 hours rapidly degrades the operational and intelligence value of the sample.

(5) The biological samples, computer diskettes, and reacted SMART/HHA tickets collected by the BIDS team will be transported to the biological detection platoon HQ element.

6. Special Situation. This STX may be conducted in sites entirety from within a BIDS system or BIDS simulator. The BIDS company commander will issue a FRAGO to support the training.

a. To conduct STX F, use the OPORD in FTX 1, 2, or 3. To train this STX by itself, use the FRAGO in Figure 4-9.

FRAGMENTARY ORDER

Copy ___ of ___ copies
Issuing headquarters
Place of issue
Date-time group of signature
Message reference number

FRAGO Number: _____

References:

1. SITUATION.

2. MISSION. The platoon has received this OPORD from higher HQ and issued this FRAGO to his unit BIDS team will evacuate a sample to the biological collection point in the vicinity of _____ NLT _____ hours. Be prepared to displace and establish supplementary biosurveillance sites, on order.

3. EXECUTION.

   a. Concept of operations.

   b. Tasks to subordinate units.

   c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-9. Sample FRAGO for STX F

b. Table 4-18 provides the sequence of events and the estimated time required for each part of this exercise.

Table 4-18. Sequence of Events and Estimated Time Allocation for STX F

EVENT	TASK	Estimate Time (Hours)
1	Give Warning Order to Company	0.5
2	Plan and Coordinate Movement Requirements	2
3	Reconnoiter AA and Routes	2
4	Coordinate for Unit Resupply and Maintenance	1
5	Brief Commander and Conduct AAR	1
6	Evacuate Biological Sample	2
7	Plan and Coordinate Through Decon Operations	2
8	Evacuate a Biological Exercise	2
TOTAL TIME		12.5 Hours
NOTE: Units should train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will be based on the factor of METT-T and the training proficiency of the Unit.		

7. Support Requirements.

a. Laboratory Support. Biological samples must be evacuated to the appropriate laboratory facilities for confirmation of a biological attack. During peacetime, a CBSCC is established at the CBDCOM. During war, the J2 is responsible for control of chemical and biological (CB) sampling operations within the theater. The J2 coordinates with the J3, command surgeon, and the theater chemical officer to plan missions for CB sampling assets. The chemical biological sampling control element (CBSCE) tracks the results of sampling operations and keeps records of all samples taken. For the purposes of your STX, designate a CBSCC (for example, company commander or corps support hospital could serve as the CBSCC).

b. Minimum trainers and O/Cs. The BIDS company or battalion commander trains and evaluates the platoon leader. The platoon leader trains and evaluates the teams. If available, use additional O/C personnel in each BIDS suite to provide additional feedback.

c. Opposing forces. Use OPFOR to harass during biosurveillance operations. Begin with a Level I Rear Area Threat, and build to a Level II Threat. If you use OPFOR, you will require vehicles with radios to transport the OPFOR. O/Cs can serve as umpires if you include the MILES or other casualty assessment systems in the training.

d. Vehicles and communications. Use organic vehicles and equipment or the BIDS simulation facility. If there is not a higher HQ present, you will require one radio with operator to function as a reporting activity.

e. Maneuver area. The BIDS requires a very large training area only if the platoon leader chooses to train in full mission profile (that is, 10 kilometer dispersal between biosurveillance sites). However, for this STX, a consolidated training location that allows dispersal of simulators (for example, BG may be more appropriate—500 meters x 500 meters should suffice). The area required for the individual biosurveillance sites should have little overhead obstructions to interfere with erection of the sky wave antenna or camouflage netting.

f. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the following:

(1) Class III requirements.

(a) Diesel: 50 gallons per vehicle and 10 to 50 gallons per generator.

(b) Motor oil: 1 quart per vehicle or generator.

(2) Communications/COMSEC requirement.

(a) Ten each training SOIs.

(b) Frequencies: 4 each HF (HI), HF (LO), and FM.

(c) One KYK13 with COMSEC fill (GPS Encryption).

(3) Ammunition. Table 4-19 gives ammunition requirements required for this STX.

Table 4-19. Ammunition Requirements for STX F

Ammunition	Quantity
Signal Illumination, Cluster[1, 2]	10 (O/Cs)
Cartridge, Blank 5.56 mm	See STRAC Manual
Cartridge, Blank 7.62 mm	See STRAC Manual
Flare, Surface, Trip	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, Booby Trap[3]	See STRAC Manual

NOTES:
[1]Refer to local SOI or range requirements for colors required for control.
[2]Ground star: red ground, white ground, green parachute, and red parachute.
[3]Simulator booby trap: flash, illumination, and whistle.

8. Training and Evaluation Outlines. The collective tasks that support this exercise can be found in Chapter 3, Table 3-2.

BIDS PLATOON
STX G

DOCUMENT BIOLOGICAL BACKGROUND DATA

1. Objective. This STX trains the BIDS platoon to work together to provide a background sample for definitive laboratory confirmation and study of possible agents at the surveillance site.

2. Interface. This mission requires the platoon to interface with the CBSCC, the J2, the J3 and the CBDCOM. The mission enhances tactical situational awareness within the corps, permitting leaders to take appropriate actions in response to potential biological agent hazards. Signal units support the operation, providing mobile subscriber equipment nodes through which the platoon can contact or interface with the division or higher level staffs. Other organizations within the BIDS platoon's base cluster may be required to augment security forces for the BIDS teams.

3. Training. This STX is executed in a garrison or field environment under various conditions.

a. Before the unit conducts this STX as a major training exercise, unit leaders and key personnel must train to become proficient in required tasks. Leader training includes--

(1) Classroom discussions to emphasize how to plan the exercise and how to implement the unit's SOP.

(2) Unit training meetings that require the leadership to brief and coordinate training areas, movement, logistics, O/Cs, training devices and simulations, and other training resource requirements.

(3) Troop-leading procedures and the military decision-making process.

(4) Documenting biological background and interpreting biosurveillance results.

(5) Map exercises to assist in analyzing key terrain, assessing contamination hazards, selecting primary and alternate routes for travel, and selecting sites and defensive positions.

(6) Terrain model exercises to permit simulations of the training areas you will use to gain a three-dimensional perspective of operations during rehearsals.

b. Tips for training. Tips for training and general instructions on how to prepare for and accomplish this STX are:

(1) Record data during the monitoring phase (that is, UVAPS readings and ambient acceptance test procedures levels from CBMS).

(2) Operate the BIDS to ensure that all pertinent information is available for later analysis.

(3) Collect background information according to standardized procedures.

(4) Accurately document background data and establish chain of custody, ensuring the sample is sealed, packaged, and secured.

(5) Store the background sample under carefully controlled conditions.

(6) Conduct a reconnaissance of the training area.

(a) Because the BIDS is very dependent upon its communications hardware, if possible, conduct a communications exercise to test your ability to communicate at the training area.

(b) Conduct a TEWT or terrain walk of the STX area.

(c) During the terrain walk, emphasize making and using strip maps, selecting and reporting passage of movement control points (for example, PLs, CPs, and the duties of the quartering/advanced party.

(7) Get a weather forecast for the training days. During weather analysis, emphasize the--

(a) Expected wind speed and direction.

(b) Expected precipitation.

(c) Observing local micrometeorological condition and activity.

(d) Recording local micrometeorological reading.

(e) Time to BMNT and EENT.

(f) Expected ambient temperature. Expected relative humidity.

(8) Conduct a terrain analysis, emphasizing the--

(a) Effects of weather and the terrain on biological cloud travel.

(b) Location of the platoon CP and biosurveillance sites.

(c) Actions to take upon receipt of a biosurveillance alert.

(9) Review the standards for the MTP T&EOs that support this exercise.

(10) Perform leader checks before conducting this STX, to include--

(a) Are platoon personnel trained on the BIDS component operation and systems operation?

(b) Have I established an SOP and immediate-action drills for the mission profile?

(c) Are METL task checklists available?

(d) Have we performed before-operations equipment maintenance?

(e) Are PLL and combat loads adequate?

4. Training Enhancers. To conduct STX G, use the FRAGO in the special situation.

a. After unit members demonstrate proficiency in their individual tasks and the key personnel demonstrate proficiency in the leader tasks, you then train the STX under several options:

(1) Under baseline conditions—that is, in daylight, with no significant weather phenomena, no biological simulators, no nuclear or chemical threat, no OPFOR, easy terrain, and unlimited logistical support.

(2) With the BIDS platoon deployed in an area array.

(3) With the BIDS platoon deployed in a critical node array.

(4) With or without OPFOR.

(5) Under varied environmental conditions, such as desert, mountain, or jungle areas; winter zones; or urbanized terrain.

(6) During day and/or night operations. While the normal mission profile has the BIDS platoon operating primarily from 2 hours before dark to 2 hours after dawn, under the crawl, walk, run training philosophy it may be necessary to conduct some individual, crew, and unit training in daylight.

b. Tailor the training exercise to the level of demonstrated training proficiency. Given your unit's mission, equipment, level of readiness, and time available, make this MTP fit your situation. Remember to teach, conduct a TEWT, and then execute the training mission. Apply the crawl, walk, run principle to this training, and use common sense. Do not waste critical training resources by increasing the training tempo when the unit is not able to perform the mission in the baseline environment.

c. Conduct this exercise with biological threat, in daylight, and without pressure. Add various threats, to include OPFOR. As soon as possible, begin night and continuous operations, as most threat biological agent employment tactics call for attacking our forces around dawn and dusk. By adding pressure and developing increasing intensity and tempo of operations, you can make this a very difficult exercise. Your options are limited only by your imagination.

d. Work with the division or corps staff and support organizations whenever possible. This develops habitual relationships and enhances realism.

e. Use the tasks listed in chapter 3 of this STX to build the MEL for the exercise scenario.

f. During training, leaders must enforce training standards for the tasks listed in chapter 3 of this STX. When the unit's proficiency meets those standards during the initial phases of training, the unit leadership should build on those standards as the training conditions and environments become more rigorous. Maintaining proficiency is best accomplished by incorporating this STX as part of an FTX or a CPX.

g. O/Cs must monitor all training actions. They--

(1) Control the tempo of the exercise and function as notional units for reporting or coordination.

(2) Are responsible for injecting incidents, orders, or information as specified in your MEL.

(3) Must be senior trainers, proficient in all aspects of the task and, if applicable, the simulations used in the STX. Simulations and intelligence are vital elements in the unit training process.

(4) Ensure that during the early stages of training, the BIDS platoon members must comprehend the tactics and fire planning or biological weapons employment doctrine of a potential adversary.

h. Make a plan based upon METT-TC factors.

(1) Mission. Document the presence of ABO or endemic biological hazards.

(2) Enemy. What is the likelihood of attack, and where, when, how, and with what?

(3) Terrain and weather. What are the military aspects of the terrain and weather that may inhibit our ability to conduct surveillance or enhance the enemy's ability to disperse the agent of biological origin?

(4) Troops and equipment. What is the condition of my soldiers and their equipment? (NOTE: You must inspect your soldiers and their equipment before any training. Ensure that your soldiers have

all of the items listed on the packing list/load plan. Limit personal items to reduce morale and discipline problems during training).

(5) Time available. How much time do my soldiers have to prepare? How much time do we have to get to the training site? How much planning time do I have? (NOTE: Apply the one-third/two-third planning time rule here. Use no more than one-third of the total time available for your planning, allowing your soldiers two-thirds of the time available to prepare.)

(6) Civilian considerations. What is the civilian population in the area?

i. Conduct the necessary coordination and modify your plan accordingly.

j. Troop-leading procedures. The platoon leader and subordinate leaders will begin the backwards-planning sequence as they begin the troop-leading process. They will--

(1) Receive and analyze the mission. See paragraph 5 and 6 of this STX.

(2) Issue a warning order. This must include time and location for issuing the final operations order.

(3) Make a tentative plan. This plan should be based upon METT-TC factors.

(4) Start necessary movement. Dispatch advanced parties or begin other necessary movement (for example, march order platoon vehicles; post road guides).

(5) Reconnoiter. Always conduct a ground reconnaissance of the training area whenever possible.

(6) Complete the plan. This should include a MEL for the exercise.

(7) Issue the complete order. This should use the standard five-paragraph operations order format.

k. Brief your platoon.

(1) Ensure that they understand the training scenario and plan by having them back brief you.

(2) Have team leaders describe their actions, using a terrain map or sand table whenever possible.

(3) Discuss local security requirements and rotation of teams into the BIDS. Discuss risk analysis and safety issues, immediate-action drills (for example, actions upon contact), air guards, weapons control orders, fields of fire, refueling procedures, and control measures.

l. Designate a quartering/advanced party. The quartering/advanced party should conduct a route reconnaissance to the training site and area reconnaissance of the training site.

m. Link up with the quartering/advanced party at the RP. Have the vehicles guided into position without stopping.

n. Establish physical security and communications immediately upon closing of the training area.

o. React to situations as presented, but remember to focus on the mission. If situations disrupt or prevent your biosurveillance operation, the mission has failed.

p. Perform before-, during-, and after-operations maintenance.

q. Ensure that your O/Cs conduct AARs.

5. General Situation.

a. The corps or division was engaged in combat. Communication is established and reports have been received. The threat force has employed weapons of mass destruction (suspected biological) in the general vicinity of the maneuver unit's area of operation.

b. Minimum standards include--

(1) Certain data should be recorded during the monitoring phase of the BIDS operation to ensure that all pertinent information is available for later analysis. These data are referred to as background data and are summarized in Table 4-20. Critical background data include BIDS location, local meteorological readings, observation of local conditions and activity, HVAPs readings (TOTAL COUNT:<L D >, LIMIT, and CODE), ambient ATP levels (microluminometer signal). Background data should be recorded at the beginning of a mission and periodically updated during the mission interval. The frequency of recording depends on the operational situation, but hourly updates are suggested with the exception of ATP levels. Since the microluminometer requires a liquid sample, ATP background level should be revised less frequently (for example, every 4 hours or when significant general picture of ambient conditions against which ALERT results can be evaluated).

In addition, they provide a useful tool to detect possible abnormal operating conditions such as a clogged HVAPS nozzle or elevated ATP backgrounds. Observations of local activity or possible biological warfare (BW) attack indicators by the BIDS team should be recorded as they occur.

(2) Information and data reported to the platoon leader includes the--

(a) BIDS startup procedures: login and report to the platoon leader and login the vehicles position (TM 3-6665-349-12&P, paragraph 2-12.a2).

(b) BIDS startup procedures: login and report to platoon HQ as soon as the BIDS become operational (TM 3-6665-349-12&P, paragraph 2-12.a.17).

(c) BIDS operating procedures: login and report to platoon HQ applicable tactical meteorological (TACMET) information (TM 3-6665-349-12&P, paragraph 2-12.b.4).

(d) BIDS operating procedures: login and report any positive threshold device or HHA results (TM 3-6665-349-12&P, paragraphs 2-18.c.11, 2-17.b.12.13, and 2-12.b.10,).

(e) High volume APS system operation: login and report the ratio, the alert time, and the duration of the alert. (TM 3-6665-349-12&P, paragraph 2-13.c.1).

(f) Biological sampler operation: login the time that the SAVE SAMPLE button was pressed for the biological sampler (following the APS alert) (TM 3-6665-349-12&P, paragraph 2-13.c.1).

(g) Liquid sampler operation: login the time that the SAVE SAMPLE button was pressed for the liquid sampler (following the APS alert) (TM 3-6665-349-12&P, paragraph 2-15.b).

(h) FCM: login and report the positive results from FCM data interpretation (TM 3-6665-349-12&P, paragraph 2-16.c).

(i) Microluminometer: login the results from the microluminometer test (TM 3-6665-349-12&P, paragraph 2-129.a).

(j) Emergency procedures: report to platoon HQ any collective-protective equipment failure (TM 3-6665-349-12&P, paragraph 2-31.a.b.c). Report to platoon HQ when one remove biological monitoring sampling, detection, or identification components become NMC (TM 3-6665-349-12&P, paragraph 2-30).

Table 4-20. BIDS Background Data

Component	Data
Global Position System (GPS)	Location - set up only
Meteorological Sensor	Wind Direction (degrees) Wind Speed (m/sec) Temperature (°C) Relative Humidity (%)
BIDS Team	Local Conditions/Activity
High Volume Aerodynamic Particle Sizer (HVAPS)	Total Count: LOW/DET/HIGH Limit Code
Microluminometer	Signal (minivolt [mV]) - as required

c. Time limits are required to ensure the integrity of biological samples. Any delay beyond 24 hours rapidly degrades the operational and intelligence value of the sample.

d. The biological samples, computer diskettes, and reacted HHA tickets collected by the BIDS team will be transported to the biological detection platoon HQ element.

6. Special Situation. This STX may be conducted in sites or in its entirety from within a BIDS system or a BIDS simulator. The BIDS company commander will issue a FRAGO to support the training.

a. To conduct STX G, use the OPORD in FTX 1, 2, or 3. To train this STX by itself, use the FRAGO in Figure 4-10.

FRAGMENTARY ORDER

Copy ___ of ___ copies
Issuing headquarters
Place of issue
Date-time group of signature
Message reference number

FRAGO Number: _____

References:

1. SITUATION.

2. MISSION. Platoon (BIDS), establishes biosurveillance sites vicinity (provide the grid coordinates or provide an operations overlay with BIDS team biosurveillance sites identified) and conduct biosurveillance operations not later than (DTG) to support corps _____. Ensure background sample is collected NLT ___. Be prepared to displace and establish supplementary biosurveillance sites, on order.

3. EXECUTION.

a. Concept of operations.

b. Tasks to subordinate units.

c. Coordinating instructions. Current overlay remains in effect.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

NAME
RANK

Figure 4-10. Sample FRAGO for STX G

b. Table 4-21 provides the sequence of events and the estimated time required for specific events in this exercise.

Table 4-21. Sequence of Events and Estimated Time Allocation for STX G

Event	Task	Estimated Time (Hours)
1	Give Warning Order to Evacuate a Biological Sample	0.5
2	Plan and Coordinate Mission Requirements	2
3	Reconnoiter Missions Area	2
4	Provide for Mission Sustainment	4
5	Conduct AAR Upon Mission Completion	1
6	Document Biological Background Data	1
	TOTAL TIME:	**10.5 Hours**

NOTE: Units should train events to standard, not to time allocation. The amount of time will be based on the factor of METT-TC and the training proficiency of the unit.

7. Support Requirements.

a. Laboratory support. Biological samples must be evacuated to the appropriate laboratory facilities for confirmation of a biological attack. During peacetime, a CBSCC is established at the CBDCOM. During war, the J2 is responsible for control of CB sampling operations within the theater. The J2 coordinates with the J3, command surgeon, and the theater chemical officer to plan missions for CB sampling assets. The CBSCC element tracks the results of sampling operations and keeps records of all samples taken. For the purposes of your STX, designate a CBSCC (for example, the company commander or the corps support hospital could serve as the center).

b. Escort. Whenever samples are handed over from one unit to another, a chain-of-custody control must occur. All sample transfers or custody changes, from person to person, are to be documented on the Material Courier Receipt, DD Form 4137. A qualified escort must accompany the suspected sample during the entire evacuation process to ensure safety and to maintain chain of custody. The sample goes to the theater chemical and biological sample collection point.

c. Minimum trainers and O/Cs. The BIDS company commander trains and evaluates the platoon leader. The platoon leader trains and evaluates the platoon. If available, use additional O/C personnel in each BIDS suite to provide additional feedback.

d. Opposing forces. Use OPFOR to harass during biosurveillance operations. Begin with a Level I Rear Area Threat, and build to a Level II Threat. If you use OPFOR, you will require vehicles with radios to transport the OPFOR. O/Cs can serve as umpires if you include the MILES or other casualty assessment systems in the training.

e. Vehicles and communications. Use organic vehicles and equipment or the BIDS simulation facility. If there is not a higher HQ present, you will require one radio with operator to function as a reporting activity.

f. Maneuver area. The BIDS requires a very large training area only if the platoon leader chooses to train in full mission profile (that is, 10-kilometer dispersal between biosurveillance sites). However, for this STX, a consolidated training location that allows dispersal of simulators (for example, BG may be more appropriate—500 meters x 500 meters should suffice). The area required for the individual biosurveillance sites should have little overhead obstructions to interfere with the erection of the sky wave antenna or camouflage netting.

g. Consolidated support requirements. This exercise requires the following:

(1) Class III requirements.

(a) Diesel: 50 gallons per vehicle and 10 to 50 gallons per generator.

(b) Motor oil: 1 quart per vehicle or generator.

(2) Communications/COMSEC requirement.

(a) Ten each training SOI.

(b) Frequencies: 4 each HF (HI), HF (LO), and FM.

(c) One KYK13 with COMSEC fill (GPS Encryption).

(3) Ammunition. Table 4-22 gives ammunition requirements required for this STX.

Table 4-22. Ammunition Requirements for STX F

Ammunition	Quantity
Signal Illumination, Cluster[1, 2]	10 (O/Cs)
Cartridge, Blank 5.56 mm	See STRAC Manual
Cartridge, Blank 7.62 mm	See STRAC Manual
Flare, Surface, Trip	See STRAC Manual
Simulator, Booby Trap[3]	See STRAC Manual

NOTES:
[1]Refer to local SOI or range requirements for colors required for control.
[2]Ground star: red ground, white ground, green parachute, and red parachute.
[3]Simulator booby trap: flash, illumination, and whistle.

8. Training and Evaluation Outlines. The collective tasks that support this exercise can be found in Chapter 3, Table 3-2.

CHAPTER 5

Training and Evaluation Outlines

5-1. Introduction. This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the units. They are training objectives (task, conditions, and standards) for the collective tasks that support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

5-2. Structure. The T&EOs in this chapter are listed in Table 5-1. The Mission-to-Collective Task Matrix in Chapter 2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

5-3. Format. The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

a. Element. This identifies the unit or unit element(s) that performs the task.

b. Task. This is a description of the action to be performed by the unit, and provides the task number.

c. References. These are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference which contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference, do not underline the reference.

d. Iteration. Used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in MOPP 4.

e. Commander/Leader Assessment. This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature and use all available evaluation data and submit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:

(1) T - Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.

(2) P - Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.

(3) U - Untrained. The unit cannot demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

f. Condition. A statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

g. Task standard.

(1) The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training. It should be understood by every soldier.

(2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the

METT-TC conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common base line for unit performance.

h. Task Steps and Performance Measures. This is a listing of actions that is required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk (*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

i. GO/NO-GO column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.

j. Task performance/evaluation summary block. This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as "GO". It also provides the evaluator a means to rate the units demonstrated performance as a "GO" or "NO-GO". It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

k. Supporting Individual Tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. Listed are the reference, tasks number, and task title.

l. Opposing Forces Tasks. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or "lose" to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished--not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-4. Usage. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks such as an STX or FTX.

Figure 5-1. List of T&EO's

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
BIDS PLT HQ
MAINTENANCE SECTION
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Maintain the Current Enemy Situation (Company/Platoon) (34-6-2010.03-0203)
(FM 34-3) (FM 101-5) (FM 34-1)
(FM 34-10) (FM 34-130) (FM 34-2)
(FM 34-8) (FM 34-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Given the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and combat information and intelligence, unit leaders maintain an updated situation map (SITMAP) with all reported and current enemy locations or dispositions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The current enemy situation is updated by unit leaders on their SITMAPs and assessed for unforeseen or newly developing risks or vulnerabilities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader receives the commander's priority intelligence requirements (PIRs) and information requirements (IRs). a. Merged significant aspects of the area of operations (AO) and the current enemy situation. b. Used the PIR and the IR to analyze the current enemy situation. c. Analyzed and compared the enemy's current dispositions and compositions with the projected course of action (COA). d. Confirmed or denied COAs and updated the enemy situation based on current intelligence and intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) products. e. Tracked the status of the latest time information is of value (LTIOV) for each PIR. 2. The element maintains the SITMAP, information displays, and journals as required by the unit's TSOP. 3. The element maintains the SITMAP, as required by the TSOP, focusing on the PIR and the IR. a. Included the enemy situation and locations. b. Portrayed the enemy situation and locations. c. Included the general friendly situation. d. Included enemy capabilities and vulnerabilities. e. Included the prioritized COAs and the probable future intent. f. Included significant events. g. Portrayed the front line trace and monitored the friendly situation. h. Listed recent significant events and indicators of future events. i. Communicated the intent and the impact to the Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence) (G2) or the Intelligence Officer (US Army) S2 (S2).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY

TASK: Process Captured Documents and Equipment (19-3-3105.03-1013)
(FM 3-19.40) (FM 19-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon has captured enemy documents and equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon processes documents and equipment according to instructions and time limits established by higher headquarters (HQ).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The platoon tags all captured documents and equipment, annotating the-- a. Type of document or equipment (maps, photographs, rifle, or radio) captured. b. Date and the time of capture. c. Place of capture (grid coordinates). d. Capturing unit. e. Circumstances of capture. f. Prisoner's name, if taken from an enemy prisoner of war (EPW).		
* 2. The platoon leader reports the information to the company HQ. The information includes the-- a. Type of document or equipment captured. b. Date and the time of capture. c. Capturing unit. d. Place of capture (grid coordinates).		
* 3. The platoon leader disposes of documents and equipment according to guidance from higher HQ. a. Destroyed, secured, evacuated, or abandoned the captured equipment. b. Evacuated captured documents through the chain of command to intelligence personnel.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

TASK: Conceal or Destroy Items of Tactical Value (19-OPFOR-1015)

CONDITION: Opposing forces (OPFOR) soldiers surrender documents and equipment of no tactical use to the enemy and attempt to conceal or destroy items of tactical value.

STANDARD: OPFOR soldiers retain or destroy documents and equipment. 1. Prevent successful capture of documents and equipment. 2. Destroy documents and equipment. 3. Remove identifying markings from equipment. 4. Remove the unit's identifying insignia.5. Provide misleading information.

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Maintain Operations Security (OPSEC) (71-3-C232.03-1019)
(AR 530-1) (AR 380-5) (FM 20-3)
(FM 3-19.30) (FM 34-60)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is operating where it can be detected by the enemy. The enemy can employ electronic-warfare (EW) measures and air and ground reconnaissance units. The enemy can use the local populace and enemy intelligence agencies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, dispositions, and intentions. The element prevents the enemy from learning any essential elements of friendly information (EEFI). The element prevents the enemy from surprising its main body.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader implements OPSEC protective measures. a. Ensured that OPSEC measures were properly implemented. b. Ensured that OPSEC was integrated into all operations and activities. c. Maintained awareness of all activities that were OPSEC sensitive.		
* 2. Leaders check or perform information security measures. a. Controlled information on a need-to-know basis. b. Prohibited fraternization with civilians, as applicable. c. Conducted alert deployment preparation and loading to minimize detection. d. Ensured that maps contained only minimum-essential information. e. Inspected and gave briefings to ensure that personnel did not carry any details of military activities in personal material such as letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs. f. Sanitized all planning areas and positions before departure.		
3. The element performs camouflage discipline. a. Used natural concealment and camouflage materials, whenever possible, to prevent ground and air observation. b. Moved on covered and concealed routes. c. Covered all reflective surfaces and unit markings with nonreflective material such as cloth, mud, or a camouflage stick. d. Covered or removed all vehicle markings.		
4. The element camouflages individual positions and equipment to prevent detection from 35 meters or greater and camouflages vehicles and crew-served weapons to prevent detection from 100 meters or greater. a. Ensured that foliage near their positions was not stripped. b. Camouflaged earth berms. c. Ensured that camouflage nets, if used, were hung properly. d. Avoided crossing near footpaths, trails, and roads, where possible. e. Erased any tracks leading to their positions. f. Ensured that vehicles parked in shadows were moved as the shadows shifted.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Replaced and replenished camouflage as needed. h. Avoided movement in the area to prevent ground and air detection. NOTE: The BIDS vehicle will be at least 100 meters from obstructions or foliage. 5. The element's net control station (NCS) enforces communications procedures. a. Enforced signal operation instructions (SOI) procedures (challenge, authentication, and decode call signs and frequencies). b. Enforced approved radiotelephone operator (RATELO) procedures. c. Enforced communications security (COMSEC) procedures (used short transmissions, the lowest power settings possible, and directional antennas; avoided transmission patterns; and maintained radio silence), as directed. 6. Elements employ COMSEC. a. Used SOI procedures (challenge, authentication, and decode call signs and frequencies). b. Used approved RATELO procedures. c. Used COMSEC procedures (used short transmissions, the lowest power setting possible, and directional antennas; avoided transmission patterns; and maintained radio silence), as directed. d. Employed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM) procedures for operations during jamming. e. Used messengers and wire to the maximum extent. f. Used visual signals according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). 7. The company employs physical security measures. a. Established observation posts (OPs). b. Used counterreconnaissance patrols. c. Employed stand-to procedures. d. Emplaced mines and obstacles. e. Tied in with adjacent units (coordination and fire). f. Used the correct challenge and password. g. Limited access to the element's area. h. Safeguarded weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents. i. Employed air guards. j. Used noise and light discipline. k. Used proper litter discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-331-0801	Challenge Persons Entering Your Area	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0815	Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
113-573-6001	Recognize Electronic Countermeasures and Implement Electronic Counter-Countermeasure (ECCM)	STP 3-54B2-SM STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Move Tactically (07-3-C211.03-1001)
(FM 7-7) (FM 7-10) (FM 7-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is required to move cross-country dismounted or mounted. The threat may consist of up to a motorized rifle company. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The platoon arrives at its destination without being surprised by the opposing forces (OPFORs). The platoon retains its ability to move. The time required to conduct this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The platoon leader assigns areas of responsibility (AORs) during movement. a. Assigned all squads to an AOR. b. Directed squad leaders to assign individual AORs. c. Ensured that there was all-round coverage of the platoon, including air guard.		
* 2. The platoon leader designates a route for movement. a. Ensured that there was concealment from ground, air, and space observation. b. Ensured that there was cover from direct fire of known enemy positions.		
3. The squads use a wedge formation during movement. a. Formed one or two wedges based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. b. Closed wedges during limited visibility so that visibility was maintained between individuals, teams, and squads. The rate of movement was maintained. c. Opened wedges as obstructions to movement and control diminished.		
* 4. The platoon leader designates the movement technique to be used based on METT-TC factors. a. Designated the traveling movement technique when enemy contact was not likely. b. Designated the traveling-overwatch movement technique when enemy contact was possible. c. Designated the bounding-overwatch movement technique when enemy contact was likely.		
5. The platoon performs the traveling movement technique. a. Maintained (dismounted) fire teams about 20 meters apart. b. Moved (dismounted) squads on a column axis about 20 meters apart. c. Moved mounted in a column formation, staggered laterally, with 50 to 100 meters between vehicles. d. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.		
6. The platoon performs the traveling-overwatch movement technique. a. Increased the distance between the lead squad and the platoon's main body by 50 to 100 meters.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: (Dismounted) The lead squad uses the traveling-overwatch movement technique and the trailing squads use the traveling movement technique. b. Conducted (mounted) movement with the lead vehicle 100 to 400 meters in front of the rest of the platoon and the other vehicles 50 to 100 meters apart. c. Reported obstacles, enemy contact, or danger areas to the platoon leader.		
7. The platoon performs the bounding-overwatch movement technique. a. Conducted bounds that did not exceed visual overwatch. b. Conducted bounds that stayed within the maximum effective range of overwatching weapons.		
* 8. The bounding squad moves. a. Signaled to the platoon leader that the squad was beginning its movement. b. Used a covered and concealed route, when available, for its bound. c. Employed a point man or buddy team as far forward as visual contact with the rest of the squad allowed. d. Moved as quickly as possible while maintaining operations security (OPSEC). e. Moved so as not to mask the fires of the overwatching element. f. Established an overwatch position to overwatch the succeeding bound upon completion of its bound. g. Informed the platoon leader that it had finished its bound and was ready to overwatch. h. Alerted the platoon leader and the overwatching element of any enemy detected, obstacles encountered, or danger areas.		
9. The overwatch squad provides overwatch. a. Occupied a position that allowed observation and fire to cover the bounding squad's movement to its next overwatch position. b. Oriented its weapons on likely enemy positions. c. Maintained continuous observation of the bounding squad, its route, and any terrain that could influence the route. d. Suppressed enemy units so that the bounding element was not fixed. e. Alerted the bounding squad and the platoon leader of any enemy that it detected. f. Prepared to bound when the bounding team assumed overwatch position.		
10. The platoon maintains security during movement. a. Maintained visual contact at a normal interval of 10 meters. NOTE: Intervals automatically expand and contract based on terrain and visibility. b. Maintained noise and light discipline. c. Observed sectors of fires so that no enemy could approach the platoon within 35 meters and no aircraft could attack the platoon without warning.		
*11. Unit leaders use control measures during movement. a. Positioned themselves where they could control the movement. b. Positioned key weapons. c. Used visual signals and oral commands to control the movement.		
12. The platoon leader controls the platoon's movements. a. Assessed the terrain continuously for potential danger areas. b. Used arm-and-hand signals once contact was made. c. Used visual and audio signals once contact was made.		
13. The platoon leader knows the platoon's location at all times.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Expressed the platoon's location as a six-digit coordinate or by using current operational graphics. b. Knew the location of all platoon elements and leading, flanking, and trailing company elements and was accurate to plus or minus 100 meters.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-329-1005	Determine a Location on the Ground by Terrain Association	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Conduct P3I Biological Detection Operations (03-3-0022)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The team is supporting military operations and has received an operation order (OPORD) to conduct biological detection operations. Enemy forces have the capability to employ biological weapons. The team has occupied the detection site and is ready to begin detection operations. In the event of equipment malfunction, the team will continue operations using alternate protocols. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The team executes the mission according to the OPORD, field manual (FM) 3-101-4, and technical manual (TM) 3-6665-350-12&P. Standards are not degraded due to performance in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Operators observe the central information processor (CIP). a. Ensured components were ready for operation, following standard protocol. b. Checked components periodically for malfunctions. c. If a malfunction occurred, proceeded as indicated on the display. 2. Operators respond to CIP alert messages. a. Ensured samplers started. b. If the CIP malfunctioned. (1) Checked to see if data was received from other instruments. (2) Turned the CIP off and inserted the floppy disk labeled "CIP REPAIR DISK" and turned the CIP back on. (3) Followed the instructions displayed. c. If the flow cytometer (FCM) or the chemical biological mass spectrometer (CBMS) was nonmission capable (NMC), and the detection decision was positive, capped and sealed the remainder of the 15-minute conical tube and included it in the evacuation package. 3. Operators perform miniature flow cytometer (mini-FCM) analysis. a. Tested sample #1 and #3. b. If the detection decision was positive, repeated step 2c, or if the detection decision was negative, returned to monitoring. 4. Operators perform biological detection analysis. a. If the biological detector was NMC tested #1 and #3 from liquid sampler with mini-FCM. b. Waited for the CIP to display results. c. Observed the CIP monitor for identification (ID) results. (1) If results were positive, included hand-held assay (HHA) and wet collector in the evacuation package. (2) If results were negative, continued monitoring, and requested guidance on the disposition of the wet collector and remaining liquid samples.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. Operators record or report alert results. a. Recorded alert results in daily log. b. Reported results according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). c. If the biological sampler was NMC, put the pipette samples #4 and #6 from the liquid sampler into a new wet collector. d. Stored or discarded the samples according to the unit's SOP. e. Continued to monitor. NOTE: The following steps are the alternate protocol. Unless otherwise stated, troubleshooting procedures should begin as soon as possible without delaying alert responses. 6. Operators operate individual components when the CIP is NMC. a. Observed the ultra violent aerodynamic particle sizer (UVAPS) and the CBMS for alert conditions. b. When an alert occurred, started the biological sampler and the liquid sampler. 7. Operators immediately manually start the liquid sampler when the UVAPS is NMC. a. When the CBMS alerted, test samples as follows: (1) Test the two short samples taken immediately prior to the alert with the mini-FCM. (2) Test the long sample taken immediately prior to the alert with the biological detector. b. If ID is positive, capped and sealed the next long sample and included it in the evacuation package. c. When there was no alert, continued sampling until the UVAPS was mission capable. 8. Operators perform continuous sampling. a. When the UVAPS and CBMS were NMC, operators-- (1) Selected CONTINUE SAMPLING for the liquid sampler. (2) Ran in 15-minute continuous sampling mode. (3) Extracted 200 milliliter into a conical tube and tested with the mini-FCM. (4) Transferred 1 milliliter into another conical tube and tested with biological detection test (did not wait for FCM results) (5) If ID results were positive, capped and sealed the remaining 15-minute conical tube and include in the evacuation package. (6) If results were negative, disposed of remaining sample. b. When UVAPS, CBMS, and FCM were NMC, operators-- (1) Selected CONTINUE SAMPLING for the liquid sampler. (2) Started the liquid sampler immediately. (3) Extracted a 1-milliliter sample for biological detector. (4) Conducted biological detection test. (5) Transfer remaining pipette sample into a wet collector. 9. Perform continuous monitoring. a. When the UVAPS, the CBMS and the liquid sampler were NMC, operators-- (1) Prepared and installed a 20/15 wet collector. (2) Changed the biological-sampler sample time to 15 minutes. (3) Started the biological sampler and changed the wet collector at the end of the cycle.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Extracted 200 microliters for the FCM test and 1 milliliter for biological detection test. (5) Conducted the FCM test first, then the biological detection test (did not wait for the FCM results). b. When the UVAPS, the CBMS, the liquid sampler and the FCM were NMC, operators-- (1) Prepared and installed a 20/15 wet collector. (2) Changed the biological sampler sample time to 15 minutes. (3) Started the biological sampler and changed the wet collector at the end of the cycle. (4) Extracted 1 milliliter for the biological detector test. (5) Conducted the biological detection test. (6) If the biological detection test was positive, included the wet collector in the evacuation package. c. When the UVAPS and the liquid sampler were NMC, operators-- (1) Prepared and installed a 20/15 wet collector. (2) Changed the biological sampler sample time to 15 minutes. (3) Started the biological sampler. (a) Changed the wet collector at the end of the cycle. (b) When the CBMS alerted, allowed the biological sampler to run an additional 5 minutes or until the end of the 15-minute cycle, whichever came first. (4) Using the P-1000 pipette, extracted 200 microliter for the mini-FCM test. If CIP results are-- (a) Positive, transfer 1 milliliter into another conical tube and test with the biological detector. (b) Negative, continue monitoring. d. When the UVAPS, the liquid sampler, and the FCM were NMC, operators-- (1) Prepared and installed 20/15 wet collector. (2) Changed the biological sampler sampling time to 15-minutes. (a) Changed wet collector at the end of the cycle. (b) If CBMS alerted, allowed the biological sampler to run an additional 5 minutes or until the end of a 15-minute cycle, whichever came first. (3) When detection result was positive, extracted 1 milliliter for biological detection test. (4) When detection result was negative, continued monitoring.		
10. Operators perform alternate sampling. a. When the CBMS and the liquid sampler were NMC, operators-- (1) Prepared and installed a 20/5 wet collector. (2) Changed the biological sampler sample time to 5 minutes. (3) At the end of cycle, extracted 200 microliter for the FCM test and 1 milliliter for the biological detection test. Replaced the wet collector. (4) Conducted the FCM test. When detection results were negative, continued monitoring. (5) When detection results were positive, conducted the biological detection test and included the wet collector in the evacuation package. b. When the liquid sampler was NMC, operators-- (1) Prepared and installed a 20/5 wet collector. (2) Changed the biological sampler sample time to 5 minutes. (3) At end of cycle, extracted 200 microliter for the FCM test and 1 milliliter for the biological detection test. Replaced wet collector.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Conducted the FCM test. When detection results were negative, continued monitoring. (5) If detection result was positive, conducted the biological detection test and included the wet collector in the evacuation package. c. When the liquid sampler and the FCM were NMC, operators-- (1) Prepared and installed a 20/5 wet collector. (2) Changed the biological sampler sample time to 5 minutes. (3) At the end of the cycle, extracted 1 milliliter for the biological detection test. If the detection result were negative, replaced the wet collector. Continued monitoring. (4) If detection result was positive included the wet collector in the evacuation package. d. When the CBMS, liquid sampler and the FCM were NMC, operators-- (1) Prepared and installed a 20/5 wet collector. (2) Changed the biological sampler sample time to 5 minutes. (3) At the end of the cycle if detection results were positive, extracted 1 milliliter for the biological detection test. (4) Conducted the biological detection test, if positive, included the wet collector in the evacuation package. If negative, continued monitoring. 11. Operators perform alternate ID when the 15-kilowatt (kw) generator is NMC. a. Ensured the vehicle's engine had been started. b. Ensured safety precautions against carbon monoxide poisoning had been taken. c. Selected the 10X mode (XXXXXXXXXX) on the liquid sampler menu. d. Started the liquid sampler and the CBMS. e. Set liquid sampler and the CBMS collector concentrator power switches from MIL to STD position. f. Continued this protocol until the 15-kilowatt (kw) generator was mission capable. 12. Conduct HHA tests. a. If the biological detection was NMC, operators-- (1) Tested samples #1 and #3 from liquid sampler with the mini-FCM. (2) Wait for CIP to display analysis results. (3) If positive, conducted HHA tests using sample #2 collected by the liquid sampler. (4) If ID results were negative, continued monitoring. (5) Entered the results in the CIP manually. (6) If the biological detection or the ID is positive, include the HHA samples and the wet collector in the evacuation package. b. If the 15-kw generator was NMC, operators-- (1) Combined last sample collected prior to the CBMS alert with the sample being collected at the time of the alert. (2) Conducted HHA test. If any test results are positive, capped and sealed the next two samples and included them in the evacuation package. (3) If all test results were negative, continue monitoring.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-522-1100	Operate the Ultraviolet Aerodynamic Particle Sizer (UVAPS)(M31E1)	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
031-522-1101	Operate the Miniature Flow Cytometer (M31E1)	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
031-522-1102	Operate the Chemical Biological Mass Spectrometer (CBMS)(M31E1)	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
031-522-1103	Conduct Handheld Assay(HHA)(M31E1)	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
031-522-1104	Operate the Liquid Sampler (M31E1)	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
031-522-1105	Operate the Single Liquid Sample Collector (Biological Sampler)(M31E1)	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
031-522-1106	Operate the Biological Detector (BD)(M31E1)	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
031-522-1107	Perform Operator Troubleshooting Procedures on the Biological Detector (BD)(M31E1)	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
031-522-1108	Operate the M31E1-BIDS Information Management System (IMS)(M31E1)	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
COMPANY
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Conduct Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) Data Analysis (03-3-0038)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is supporting military operations and has received an operation order (OPORD) to conduct biological detection operations. Enemy forces have the capability to employ biological weapons. The platoon has occupied detection sites and is conducting detection operations. BIDS teams are forwarding BIDS incident reports to the BIDS team leader. The BIDS team leader receives periodic situation reports (SITREPs) from higher and adjacent units. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Correlate BIDS incident reports using corresponding nondevelopmental item (NDI) or preplanned product improvement (P31) formats. Analyze BIDS incident reports and operational information. Provide a command recommendation consistent with detection or identification event characterization, grouping, and attribution and according to Field Manual (FM) 3-101-4, Technical Manual (TM) 3-6665-350-12&P, Technical Bulletin (TB) 3-6665-349, and TB 3-6665-350. Standards are not degraded due to performance in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The BIDS team accurately records BIDS incident report transmissions. a. Recorded alert data. b. Recorded detection data. c. Recorded identification data. d. Recorded all results when the sending unit's information management system was nonmission capable (NMC) (P3I BIDS specific.) e. Tracked incoming reports to ensure that all anticipated follow-up messages were received or reports were closed.		
2. The BIDS team characterizes events with positive detection and/or identification results. a. Ensured that teams were assigned sample identification numbers according to standard operating procedure (SOP) guidance and doctrine. b. Tracked characterized events by team and sequence number or team and time group. c. Reported characterized events to the biodetection company operations or the net control station (NCS) immediately.		
3. The BIDS team plots characterized events on a map overlay.		
4. The BIDS team groups characterized events. a. Identified similar events based on locations, meteorological data, and terrain influences. b. Used initial groupings from Step 1a; identified groups based on system results.		
5. The BIDS team attributes causes to characterized events and resulting groups. a. Reviewed meteorological conditions.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Reviewed local SITREPs. c. Reviewed the enemy situation. d. Attributed cause of weather, local conditions, and mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. * 6. The leader provides an assessment to the biodetection company operations or NCS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Conduct A Hand-Held Assay (HHA) (M31-BIDS) (03-3-7004)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) platoon is supporting combat operations. The platoon is tasked to conduct biological monitoring and sampling operations. Communication is established, and reports are being received from subordinate units and transmitted to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). Enemy forces have the capability to employ biological weapons and may have already employed them. The biological detection platoon is tasked to set up operations within the corps's area of operations (AO) and conduct biological detection operations to detect biological aerosols and to submit findings and results to higher HQ according to the operation order (OPORD) instructions and the TSOP. Biological detection procedures are initiated upon a high-volume aerodynamic particle sizer (HVAPS) alert or other alert sequence. It has been determined that the HHA will be used as the primary detection system. The threshold system (THS) was reported as nonmission capable (NMC), and troubleshooting procedures were initiated according to Technical Manual (TM) 3-6665-350-12&P. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Without error, the BIDS team conducts primary or alternate detection with the HHA. Final detection results are produced 15 minutes after generic or nonspecific detection results are obtained.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The BIDS teams uses either a primary or an alternate HHA test device.		
2. The BIDS team responds to a HVAPS alert or other reduced-capability alert sequence.		
3. Operator #2 begins troubleshooting the THS, if appropriate.		
4. The BIDS team conducts identification (ID) procedures, if the flow cytometer (FCM), the microluminometer, or the HVAPS indicate a possible biological agent attack.		
5. Operator #1 selects the two-liquid samples from the conical tube that correspond to the highest peaks on the HVAPS response monitor.		
6. Operator #1 uses the P-1000 pipette with 1000 microliter pipette tips to combine the two samples into a single conical tube and passes the combined sample to Operator #2.		
7. Operator #2 conducts ID procedures with the HHA test device.		
8. The BIDS team labels the HHA test device with the assigned 19-digit sample ID number as required by the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		
9. Operator #1 or operator #2 completes the BIDS logbook and the BIDS incident report (BIR) entries and reports the results of the HHA test device to higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Conduct Biological Detection Operations (M31-Biological Integrated Detection System [BIDS]) (03-3-7005)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The team is supporting military operations and has received an operation order (OPORD) to conduct biological detection operations. Enemy forces have the capability to employ biological weapons. The team has occupied the detection site and is ready to begin detection operations. In the event of equipment malfunction, the team will continue operations using alternate protocols. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Without error, the BIDS team conducts setup, preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS), and normal operations within one hour. The BIDS team executes the mission according to the OPORD and current technical and doctrinal references.

NOTE: Depending upon the theater of operation, it has been determined that the threshold system (THS) or the hand-held assay (HHA) may be designated as the primary detection component.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The BIDS team ensures that components are ready for operation, following standard protocol. 2. The BIDS team checks all components periodically for malfunction. a. Proceeded to reduce capability operations, if any of the following components were nonmission capable (NMC): (1) High-volume aerodynamic particle sizer (HVAPS). (2) Microluminometer. (3) Flow cytometer (FCM). (4) Liquid sampler. (5) Biological sampler. (6) THS. b. Directed monitoring, when cued. 3. The BIDS team responds to an HVAPS alert or other alert sequence. a. Operator #1 activated the liquid and biological samplers. b. Operator #2 obtained and recorded data from the Tactical Meteorological (TACMET) System on the BIDS incident report (BIR). c. Operator #1 tested selected samples on the FCM. d. Operator #2 tested selected liquid samples using the microluminometer. e. If tests were negative, repeated the tests using another set of selected liquid samples. f. If all tests were negative, operator #1 evaluated the HVAPS profile for additional information in determining the final positive/negative decision process. g. If any tests from the microluminometer, FCM, or HVAPS were positive, operator #1 obtained selected liquid samples for evaluation using the THS as the primary identification system or if NMC, using the HHA as the primary identification system. h. Recorded results in the BIDS logbook.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Prepared the wet collector for evaluation, if required or directed. Placed it in the driver's side cooler pending disposition instructions. j. Submitted the BIR to higher headquarters (HQ) and maintained appropriate data pending evacuation instructions or for historic reasons. 4. The BIDS team, depending on the mission, continues to monitor for HVAPS alerts or go to the shutdown procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: React to Smoke Operations (03-3-C209)
(FM 3-50)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit encounters friendly or enemy smoke while conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit exploits the threat smoke or employs friendly smoke to conceal its own activities and continues the mission. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit does not allow smoke to impede its performance of the mission. a. Performed its mission in the presence of smoke. b. Used threat smoke to conceal its movements. c. Moved to alternate positions to reduce the effects of the threat's use of smoke. d. Considered using countersmoke to conceal its own activities.		
2. The unit employs organic smoke grenade launchers, smoke pots, and smoke hand grenades. a. Coordinated smoke operations with the unit commander or the supported unit. b. Determined the wind's direction and speed. c. Determined where to release smoke and where it would travel. d. Determined the duration of smoke operations. e. Determined the effect of weather conditions on its smoke plan. f. Ensured that the smoke covered an area larger than the unit's position. g. Requested smoke support from other units (if the organic systems did not accomplish the task).		
3. The unit uses target acquisition and guidance systems. a. Determined what available target acquisition and guidance systems were effective in smoke. b. Requested and used target acquisition and guidance systems that were effective in smoke.		
* 4. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) requests resupply of smoke munitions, when required. a. Requested smoke grenades and smoke pots. b. Distributed smoke grenades and smoke pots.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-508-3061	Plan Smoke Operations	STP 3-54B34-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)
031-508-3061D	Plan Smoke Operations	STP 3-54B34-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)
031-508-3067	Control Smoke Operations	STP 3-54B34-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY

TASK: Prepare for Operations under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions (03-3-C201)
(FM 3-100) (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Higher headquarters (HQ) informs the unit that the opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting NBC warfare in the area. NBC equipment has been issued. Soldiers carry protective masks with their load-carrying equipment (LCE), having their mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) gear readily available (within the work area). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit uses collective protection or takes measures to limit the effects of NBC attacks or contamination and continues the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader checks the accountability and serviceability of NBC defense equipment. a. Ensured that NBC detection equipment was issued to trained operators. b. Ensured that NBC detection equipment was employed and operating within 15 minutes. c. Identified equipment shortages. d. Took action to obtain replacement equipment. 2. The unit assumes MOPP levels as directed by higher HQ or as the NBC situation dictates and is prepared to operate at the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). The soldiers-- a. Donned their masks and hoods within 15 seconds. b. Assumed MOPP 4 within 8 minutes. 3. The unit takes action to protect themselves against an NBC attack. a. Set up and used collective-protective shelters, if available. b. Prepared protective shelters (such as foxholes) with overhead cover. * 4. The unit leader adjusts the MOPP level using MOPP analysis. a. Received and analyzed the enemy's NBC threat capability. NOTE: Some considerations are: Is the unit targeted or can it be targeted? Does the enemy have the capability to deliver chemical or nuclear weapons? When or where would the enemy most likely deliver the chemical or nuclear weapons? b. Collected and analyzed weather data. NOTE: Some considerations are: Is it day or night? What are the current weather conditions (see the chemical downwind message [CDM] or the weather report)? What are weather conditions two, four, and six hours in the future (see the CDM or the weather report)? c. Analyzed the unit's status and mission. NOTE: Some considerations are: What is the mission? What is the work rate? How long will the work take? What is the training and physical level of the unit? How long will it take to warn all soldiers of an NBC attack?		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	Implement Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-504-1008	Operate the M8A1 Alarm System	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
031-506-2019	Supervise Preparation of Vehicles, Equipment, and Personnel for NBC Reconnaissance	STP 3-54B2-SM STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY

TASK: Prepare for a Chemical Attack (03-3-C202)
(FM 3-100) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The opposing forces (OPFOR) are conducting chemical warfare or intelligence indicates its use is imminent. Higher headquarters (HQ) directs implementation of actions to minimize casualties and limit contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel must assume mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 within 8 minutes and complete their preparation efforts before the attack or its effects reach their location. The unit protects its personnel, equipment, food, and water and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order.		
2. Unit personnel start defensive preparations for a chemical attack. a. Assumed MOPP 4 within 8 minutes after notification. b. Attached M9 detector paper to their right arms, left wrists, either their right or left ankles, and the vehicles. c. Conducted MOPP field sanitation procedures. d. Emplaced chemical-agent alarms upwind of their position.		
3. Unit personnel prepare fighting positions and shelters. a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters. b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover. NOTE: Fighting positions should have overhead cover consisting of a minimum of 18 inches of soil, if time permits.		
* 4. Noncommissioned officers (NCOs) check personnel and fighting positions. a. Ensured that personnel were at MOPP 4. b. Ensured that individual and platoon fighting positions were hardened with sandbags and overhead cover.		
* 5. The unit leader takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation by increasing, decreasing, or modifying the MOPP level as appropriate.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	Implement Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY

TASK: Respond to a Chemical Attack (03-3-C203)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)
(FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is deployed in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 2. Intelligence indicates that the opposing forces (OPFOR) have initiated chemical warfare. The automatic alarm sounds or the detector paper changes color, causing the unit to react. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Soldiers sound the alarm (vocal or nonvocal), immediately assume MOPP 4, and immediately use available shelter to prevent further exposure to contamination. The unit reacts to the chemical alarm within 9 seconds.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders ensure that soldiers react to the sound of the chemical-agent alarm or recognize the indicators for a chemical or biological attack. a. Ensured that soldiers put on protective masks within 9 seconds. b. Gave a vocal or nonvocal alarm. c. Assumed MOPP 4 as soon as possible. d. Sought additional shelter, if available. e. Administered a nerve-agent antidote to other soldiers (buddy aid) with symptoms of nerve-agent poisoning, if applicable. f. Administered nerve-agent antidotes to selves, if applicable. g. Checked soldiers to ensure that protective measures were followed.		
2. Soldiers take additional protective measures. a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies. b. Monitored the area by testing it with detector kits. c. Used prevention procedures, such as marking contaminated areas.		
3. Soldiers conduct immediate decontamination. a. Conducted skin decontamination. b. Wiped down personal equipment with M291 or M295 decontamination kits. c. Conducted operator's spray down of equipment.		
* 4. Unit leaders initiate unmasking procedures and report to higher headquarters (HQ). a. Ensured that casualties were provided medical care. b. Reported casualties. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher HQ immediately. d. Continued the mission or requested movement to an alternate location.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1030	Prepare the Chemical Agent Monitor for Operation	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1000	Evaluate a Casualty	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1030	Administer Nerve Agent Antidote to Self (Self-Aid)	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1031	Administer First Aid to a Nerve Agent Casualty (Buddy-Aid)	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY

TASK: Prepare for a Friendly Nuclear Strike (03-3-C205)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives a strike-warning (STRIKWARN) message from higher headquarters (HQ) directing specific actions to be implemented. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit completes preparations within 30 minutes of a friendly nuclear STRIKWARN.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Designated radio operators acknowledge the STRIKWARN message. a. Authenticated the call. b. Acknowledged the warning by a return message. * 2. The unit leader issues a warning order. a. Warned subordinate and affected units. b. Ensured that subordinates executed actions as directed. 3. Unit soldiers complete actions before detonation occurs. a. Placed vehicles and equipment for the best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment. c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. NOTE: Add sandbags to shelters, foxholes, or tents in the direction of the strike. Cover openings or position them away from the strike. f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Secured loose, flammable (or explosive) items and food or water containers to protect them from nuclear-weapons effects.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY

TASK: Prepare for a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C206)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives notice that a nuclear attack is probable and must initiate actions to minimize casualties and damage. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit hardens and shields positions and equipment and conducts periodic monitoring.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader issues a warning order to subordinate units, ensuring that all soldiers understand the order.		
* 2. The unit begins defensive preparation for a nuclear attack. a. Placed vehicles and equipment for the best terrain shielding (hill masses, slopes, culverts, depressions). b. Turned off and disconnected nonessential electronic equipment according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). c. Tied down essential antennas. d. Took down nonessential antennas and antenna leads according to the unit's SOP or other guidance. e. Improved shelters with consideration for blast, thermal, and radiation effects. f. Zeroed dosimeters. g. Secured loose, flammable (or explosive) items and food and water containers to protect them from nuclear weapons effects. h. Took cover in hardened shelters, if available. i. Used field-expedient shelters.		
* 3. The unit takes additional actions consistent with the tactical situation. a. Continued periodic monitoring. b. Reported all dose-rate and dosimeter readings to higher headquarters (HQ).		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY

TASK: Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area (03-3-C208)
(FM 3-3) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives orders to cross a radiologically contaminated area. The area's approximate boundaries are known or marked. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area by the shortest, fastest route available without incurring radiation casualties or spreading contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders prepare for the crossing. a. Directed individuals who may have been exposed to radioactive dust particles to cover their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, roll their sleeves down, and wear gloves. b. Received operational exposure guidance (OEG) from the commander (turn-back dose or turn-back dose rate). c. Ensured that radiac-equipment operators checked their instruments. 2. The unit prepares for the crossing. a. Identified extra shielding requirements; for example, used sandbags on the floor of vehicles. b. Placed externally stored equipment inside or covered it with available material. c. Started continuous monitoring. 3. The unit crosses the area. a. Avoided stirring up dust. b. Kept out of dust clouds by increasing intervals/distance between vehicles. c. Conducted the movement as rapidly as possible (tracked vehicles were buttoned up). 4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment. a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties, if applicable. c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Evacuated casualties. e. Continued the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	Control Unit Radiation Exposure	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY

TASK: Respond to the Residual Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C222)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is located within a predicted fallout area. The mission does not allow movement from the predicted fallout area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to residual radiation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Unit leaders prepare the unit for fallout. a. Ensured that individuals covered their noses and mouths with handkerchiefs or clean rags, rolled their sleeves down, and wore gloves. b. Covered the equipment; munitions; petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) supplies; and food and water containers or placed them inside shelters or vehicles. c. Used shelters, closed vehicles, or available shielding to protect personnel from fallout. d. Ensured that continuous monitoring was maintained using available nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) detection and NBC identification equipment. 2. Designated personnel monitor the fallout. a. Maintained total-dose information, using available total-dose instruments. b. Ensured that exposure was minimized while the commander determined if relocation to a clean area was necessary or possible. c. Calculated the optimum time of exit. d. Sent NBC 4 reports to higher headquarters (HQ) as required, using secure means when possible. * 3. The unit leader develops a contingency plan. a. Used guidance from higher HQ based on the mission and previous radiation exposure. b. Planned for the rotation of individuals to minimize their exposure.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	Control Unit Radiation Exposure	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-506-1051	Record Data on DA Form 1971-R or 1971-1-R	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
031-506-2010	Calculate Time of Entry/Time of Stay for Fallout Areas	STP 3-54B2-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
031-506-2015	Compute Total Dose for Fallout Area	STP 3-54B2-SM STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY

TASK: Respond to the Initial Effects of a Nuclear Attack (03-3-C223)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-100) (FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Soldiers observe a brilliant flash of light and/or a mushroom-shaped cloud. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit takes actions to minimize exposure to the initial effects of a nuclear detonation in its area and continues its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Soldiers take immediate protective actions in response to a nuclear attack. a. Without warning, soldiers-- (1) Closed their eyes immediately. (2) Dropped to the ground in a prone position, with their head toward the blast, if possible (if in the hatch of an armored vehicle, immediately dropped down inside the vehicle). (3) Kept their heads and faces down and their helmets on. (4) Remained in a prone position until the blast wave passed and all debris stopped falling. b. With warning, soldiers-- (1) Identified the best available shelter, such as fighting positions or inside shelters. (2) Moved to the shelter. (3) Took actions to protect themselves from the blast and radiation. (4) Kept their clothing loosely fitted and their headgear on at all times. (5) Protected their eyes and minimized exposed skin areas.		
* 2. Leaders reorganize the unit. a. Reestablished the chain of command. b. Reestablished communications. c. Submitted a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report to higher headquarters (HQ). d. Treated casualties. e. Reported casualties. f. Evacuated casualties. g. Evaluated facilities for protection from residual radiation. h. Implemented continuous monitoring. i. Submitted a damage assessment to higher HQ. j. Initiated an area damage control plan, as required. k. Extinguished all fires.		
* 3. Leaders ensure that weapon systems are operational.		
4. Soldiers right overturned vehicles. a. Checked for loss of coolant, fuel, and battery fluids.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Performed operator maintenance to restore moderately damaged vehicles to combat use. 5. Soldiers improve cover, if applicable. a. Chose dense covering material. b. Covered in depth. c. Provided strong support. d. Covered as much of the opening as practical.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1018	React to Nuclear Hazard/Attack	MOS E COM 9
031-503-3005	Submit an NBC 1 Report	MOS E COM 9
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4003	Control Unit Radiation Exposure	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-506-1051	Record Data on DA Form 1971-R or 1971-1-R	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1007	Perform First Aid for Burns	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1016	Put on a Field or Pressure Dressing	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1017	Put on a Tourniquet	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1025	Perform First Aid for an Open Abdominal Wound	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1033	Perform First Aid for an Open Head Wound	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1034	Perform First Aid for a Suspected Fracture	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY

TASK: Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-3-C224)
(FM 3-5) (FM 3-100)

ITERATION:	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is operating in a contaminated environment. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 is increasing, and protective gear is in danger of penetration by contamination. The time and the tactical situation permit the unit to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, a decontamination unit is available, and it is operational and tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit decontaminates its individual gear and conducts MOPP gear exchange (using the buddy system) without sustaining additional casualties from nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) contamination. The unit limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination on equipment and minimizes contamination on soldiers according to Field Manual (FM) 3-5. The unit reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to FM 3-5 and/or reduces chemical and biological contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provides temporary relief from MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The contaminated unit's leader determines the extent of contamination and establishes decontamination priorities. a. Received input from his staff and subordinate leaders. b. Established decontamination priorities.		
2. The contaminated unit submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request should include, as a minimum the following: a. Contaminated unit's designation. b. Contaminated unit's location. c. Contaminated unit's frequency and call sign. d. Time that the unit became contaminated. e. Number of vehicles and equipment (by type) that were contaminated. f. Type of contamination. g. Special requirements (such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and a unit decontamination team).		
* 3. The contaminated unit coordinates with higher HQ. a. Obtained permission to conduct decontamination and obtained necessary support. b. Selected the linkup point to meet supporting units (a company supply section, a company or battalion power-driven decontamination equipment (PDDE) crew, or a decontamination squad or platoon). c. Coordinated with supporting elements. d. Requested replacement MOPP gear. e. Coordinated with supporting units to determine if they would also conduct a MOPP gear exchange.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. The contaminated unit's leader and NBC specialists select a site to conduct the operation, ensuring that the site selected provides-- a. Adequate overhead concealment. b. Good drainage. c. Easy access and exit routes (but off the main routes). d. Proximity to a water source large enough to support vehicle wash down. e. An area large enough to accommodate units involved in operational decontamination (100 square meters for both the vehicle wash-down site and the MOPP gear exchange site). 5. The contaminated unit coordinates for operational decontamination support (a company or battalion PDDE crew or a decontamination unit). a. Requested operational decontamination support. b. Notified higher HQ of the area for the operational decontamination. c. Established communications with the decontamination unit. d. Ensured that the decontamination unit knew the locations of the linkup and the selected decontamination site. 6. The contaminated unit and supporting units move to the decontamination site. a. Met at the linkup point as coordinated. b. The contaminated unit provided security at both the linkup point and the decontamination site. 7. The units prepare for operational decontamination. a. Set up the decontamination site. (1) The supporting decontamination unit crew set up the vehicle wash-down site. (2) The contaminated unit set up a MOPP gear exchange site not less than 50 meters upwind of the vehicle wash-down site. (3) The remainder of the unit prepared its equipment for decontamination. b. Conducted preparatory actions in the predecontamination area. (1) Vehicle crews (except operators) dismounted unless they had an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior. (2) Dismounted crews removed mud and camouflage from vehicles. NOTE: The contaminated unit provides personnel to do this when crews do not dismount. (3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews. (a) Ensured that vehicle operators were briefed (included the use of overhead cover and concealment and proper intervals). (b) Ensured that vehicles were buttoned up; for example, all doors, hatches, and other openings were closed or covered. (4) Moved vehicles (with operators) to the vehicle wash-down site. (5) Moved dismounted crews and all other soldiers in the contaminated unit to the MOPP gear exchange site. 8. The decontamination unit's noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) supervises the operation of the vehicle wash-down site, ensuring that vehicle operators perform the following: a. Maintained proper intervals between vehicles while processing through the wash-down station. b. Washed vehicles properly. (1) Started at the top and worked down. (2) Sprayed hot soapy water for 2 to 3 minutes per vehicle. (3) Monitored water consumption. c. Moved to the assembly area (AA) after the vehicle's wash down.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Moved to the MOPP gear exchange site and conducted MOPP gear exchange. 9. The contaminated unit conducted MOPP gear exchange. a. Prepared the equipment decontamination station (with supertropical bleach [STB] dry mix). b. Briefed MOPP gear exchange participants on procedures to be followed. c. Placed the decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (such as plastic, a poncho, or similar material). d. Exchanged MOPP gear using the buddy system. e. Moved the soldiers to the AA after they completed the MOPP gear exchange. NOTES: 1. Ensure that supporting units have the opportunity to use the MOPP gear exchange site before proceeding. 2. Ensure that the supporting decontamination unit cleans and marks the site and reports the area of contamination (using an NBC 4 report) to higher HQ. *10. Unit leaders account for all personnel and equipment after completing the operational decontamination. *11. The contaminated unit's leader reports to higher HQ. a. Reported the completion and the location of the vehicle wash-down and MOPP gear exchange decontamination sites. b. Requested permission to perform unmasking procedures if, through testing, no hazards were detected. c. Determined the adequacy of decontamination and adjusted the MOPP level as required (after obtaining approval from higher HQ). 12. The unit continues the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1023	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination When Changing Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-505-1011	Operate the AN/PDR27-Series Radiac Set	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
031-507-1040	Perform Operator PMCS on Decontaminating Apparatus, Portable	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY

TASK: Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area (03-3-C226)
(FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1M 2M 3M 4M 5M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is moving to a new location on a designated route and cannot move off that route and still complete its assigned mission. The unit discovers contamination on the route and is directed to cross the contaminated area. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit crosses the contaminated area without suffering chemical-agent casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader selects a route across the contaminated area. a. Used a nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 5 (chemical) report or reconnaissance reports to select a route. b. Selected a route that minimized exposure consistent with the mission. c. Obtained route clearance and approval. 2. The unit prepares to cross the area. a. Assumed mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 for crossing the area. b. Ensured that all drivers, vehicle commanders, and leaders knew the march route and/or had strip maps. c. Ensured that all vehicles were buttoned up (mounted movement). d. Placed externally stored equipment inside or covered it with available material. e. Attached M9 detector paper to soldiers and vehicles to provide warning of contamination. 3. The unit crosses the area. a. Avoided low ground, overhanging branches, and brush to the extent allowed by the tactical situation. b. Conducted a dismounted movement, if necessary, as rapidly as possible. c. Crossed the area as quickly and as carefully as possible. 4. The unit performs immediate decontamination of personnel and equipment. a. Checked for casualties. b. Reported casualties, if applicable. c. Conducted necessary decontamination. d. Evacuated casualties. e. Continued the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1M**	**2M**	**3M**	**4M**	**5M**		**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1030	Prepare the Chemical Agent Monitor for Operation	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1031	Use the Chemical Agent Monitor	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1032	Prepare the Chemical Agent Monitor for Movement	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-3004	Supervise the Crossing of a Contaminated Area	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1005	Determine a Location on the Ground by Terrain Association	STP 21-1-SMCT
121-030-3534	Report Casualties	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY

TASK: Prepare for a Biological Attack (03-4-0018)
(FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is engaged in combat, or combat is imminent. Communication is established, and you are receiving reports from subordinate units and are submitting them to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). Enemy forces possess the capability to employ biological weapons and may have already employed them. You have received notice that a biological attack is probable. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element must implement actions to minimize casualties and damage to the equipment. The element must assume the designated mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) level and complete their preparation before the attack or the effects of the attack reach their location. The element must protect personnel, equipment, food, and water and continue its mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader issues a warning order with special instructions included. a. Ensured that all personnel received the warning order. b. Ensured that all personnel understood the warning order. 2. The element starts defensive preparations for a possible biological attack. a. Assumed the designated MOPP level according to the TSOP. b. Enforced field sanitation procedures. c. Monitored for biological contamination (observed personnel for symptoms of contamination and looked for dead animals). d. Covered and protected food, water, and equipment. 3. The element prepares fighting positions and shelters. a. Used existing, natural, or man-made facilities (such as caves, ditches, culverts, and tunnels) as fighting positions and shelters. b. Dug fighting positions and bunkers with overhead cover. * 4. The element leader increases or decreases the MOPP level based upon the tactical situation and guidance received from higher HQ or the commander.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	Implement Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-503-4002	Supervise Unit Preparation for NBC Attack	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY

TASK: Respond to a Biological Attack (03-4-0019)
(FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION:	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M	(Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:			T	P	U	(Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is engaged in combat, or combat is imminent. Communication is established, and you are receiving reports from subordinate units and are submitting them to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). Enemy forces possess the capability to employ biological weapons and may have already employed them. A weapon just exploded in the element's area with soldiers exhibiting symptoms of biological agents. This task is always performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The element takes immediate actions. Soldiers continue the mission.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Soldiers react to the attack. a. Donned their mask. b. Assumed mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.		
2. Soldiers conduct immediate decontamination. a. Decontaminated their contaminated skin. b. Conducted wipe down of their equipment.		
* 3. The element leader reorganizes the unit, as required. a. Reestablished the chain of command and communications. b. Received the element's status; consolidated the status and passed it on to higher HQ, as appropriate. c. Identified, treated, marked, and evacuated casualties. Decontaminated soldiers wounded in action (WIA) before medical evacuation. d. Wrapped, marked, and evacuated soldiers killed in action (KIA) to the designated collection point. e. Ensured that mission operations continued.		
4. The element takes additional protective measures. a. Protected exposed equipment and supplies. b. Monitored the area. c. Ensured that preventive-medicine and field sanitation procedures were implemented. d. Marked the contaminated areas, as required.		
5. The element submits and processes the required chemical and biological reports. a. Submitted an initial nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) 1 report (suspected biological attack) according to the TSOP. b. Prepared and disseminated an NBC 3 report to subordinate units according to the TSOP. c. Transmitted a follow-up NBC 1 report that included observation information, when observations showed that it was probably a biological attack.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. The element leader ensures that all soldiers receive or have received immunization for the type of agent used. * 7. The element leader adjusts the MOPP level as required based on the MOPP analysis and guidance received from higher HQ. * 8. The element leader conducts unmasking procedures based on determining that the hazard has dissipated from the area. 9. The element replenishes NBC-defense equipment and supplies. a. Initiated replacement action for equipment and supplies. b. Distributed or cross-loaded supplies to an equal level within the element. 10. The element continues the mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1M	2M	3M	4M	5M		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-3008	Implement Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Conduct Long-Range Biological Detection System (LRBSDS) Preflight Operations (03-5-0001)
(TM 3-6665-351-10) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The team is engaged in combat or combat is imminent. Enemy forces have the capability to employ biological weapons. The team is located with the LRBSDS supporting aviation unit and has just received an order to conduct LRBSDS biodetection. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Receive the mission, complete mission coordination, conduct precombat inspections (PCIs), install the M94 LRBSDS, and perform preflight operational equipment checks according to Field Manual (FM) 3-101-4, Technical Manual (TM) 3-6665-351-10, and the operation order (OPORD). Troubleshoot equipment as required. Team members can perform this task in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The LRBSDS noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) receives the LRBSDS biodetection mission and begins troop-leading procedures. a. Received the mission completely and correctly. b. Issued a warning order including the mission, the mission time, specific instructions, and the time and place for the fragmentary order (FRAGO). c. Made a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian consideration (METT-TC) factors. d. Started team movement, if necessary. e. Conducted a reconnaissance (a map reconnaissance at a minimum). f. Coordinated mission details with the battlefield deception company and the supporting aviation unit. g. Completed the FRAGO. h. Issued the complete FRAGO with two-thirds of the remaining time for the team to prepare for the mission. i. Supervised PCIs and conducted rehearsals. 2. Soldiers perform PCIs according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and appropriate TMs. a. Loaded individual or unit equipment according to the load plans. b. Drew food, water, and ammunition according to the basic load or the warning order. c. Performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) and preinstallation equipment checks according to the appropriate TM. (1) Performed PMCS on the M94 LRBSDS. (2) Performed PMCS on the 3-kilowatt (kw) generator. (3) Performed PMCS on the team vehicles and forklift. d. Performed function checks and test fires according to the appropriate TM or the local SOP. e. Troubleshot malfunctions according to the appropriate TM. f. Inventoried, restocked, and refueled all organic equipment and identified unavailable items.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
3. Soldiers install the M94 LRBSDS on the aircraft according to the TM. a. Inspected the aircraft for installation deficiencies. b. Secured the M94 LRBSDS according to the TM. c. Did not damage the aircraft. d. Completed the installation no later than 30 minutes before station time. 4. Soldiers perform preflight operational checks according to the TM. a. Raised the laser platform. b. Preheated the laser using the 3 kw generator. c. Transitioned the laser to aircraft power according to the TM. d. Completed all checks, opened the laser's mechanical shutter, and secured themselves in their seats before station time.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ

TASK: Conduct Long-Range Biological Detection System (LRBSDS) Biological Detection (03-5-0002)
(TM 3-6665-351-10) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The team is engaged in combat, or combat is imminent. Enemy forces have the capability to employ biological weapons. The team receives a biodetection operation order (OPORD), installs the M94 LRBSDS in the utility helicopter (UH)-60, and completes all preflight operational checks. All equipment is operational. The target airspace has nominal visibility of at least 15 kilometers (km). Natural or man-made aerosols, such as fog or smoke, may be present in the target area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Execute the mission according to the OPORD, Field Manual (FM) 3-101-4, Technical Manual (TM) 3-6665-351-10, and Technical Bulletin (TB) 3-6665-351. Detect 90 percent of particular aerosols with a 2:1 signal-to-noise ratio (SNR). Detect 80 percent of particulate aerosols with a 1:1 SNR. Detect 50 percent of particulate aerosol ground releases. Report all observed particulate aerosol detections. Troubleshoot equipment as required. Team members can perform this task in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The LRBSDS operator prepares the M94 LRBSDS for laser operations according to the TM. a. Requested permission (after takeoff), then powered the system. b. Performed information processor and software checks. c. Initialized the system and rotated the laser to the correct door. d. Set mission parameters according to the mission brief or in-flight mission modifications. e. The assistant operator verified the laser's position. f. Informed the pilot that he was operational and ready to start laser operations from the correct door.		
2. The LRBSDS operator conducts biological detection operations according to the TM. a. Performed detector, laser, and alignment tests according to the TM, after the pilot approved laser operations. b. Selected the RUN button and began biological detection operations. c. The assistant operator or the flight crew warned the operator to stop the laser if aircraft approached the laser's beam path. d. Established a scan history and reestablished a scan history, as required. e. Observed the waveform, scan display, and scan history windows for particulate aerosol signatures. f. Adjusted scan parameters, as required. g. Conducted during-operations preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) according to the TM.		
3. The LRBSDS team records LRBSDS incident data using the approved format. a. The operator observed a detection event.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. The operator announced range, width, height-above-ground, and height and intensity. c. The operator continued to track the event. d. The assistant operator recorded the announced data, date-time group (DTG), location, aircraft heading, crab range, ground speed, and altitude. e. The operator announced the total number of hits. f. The assistant operator recorded the location of the last hit and completed the LRBSDS incident data report. 4. The assistant operator reports LRBSDS incident data according to the mission order and the standard format. a. Reported initial data. b. Reported follow-up data. c. Reported lost cloud data. 5. The LRBSDS team performs procedures for aircraft course change, as required. a. The operator, on the pilot's command, stopped laser operations and announced, "Laser off." b. The operator rotated the laser if a course change required changing the door position. c. The assistant operator verified the laser and the door position. d. The operator, on the pilot's command, resumed laser operations. 6. The LRBSDS team performs in-flight shutdown procedures when told the aircraft is going to land. The operator-- a. Selected the RUN button to turn off the laser. b. Depressed the LASER EMISSION OFF button. c. Stowed the laser and exited the software. d. Halted the system and turned off the system's power. e. Turned off circuit breakers, fiber optic receivers, and the power. 7. The LRBSDS team troubleshoots equipment according to the TM.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment (05-3-0210.03-1001)
(FM 20-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is tactically deployed. The enemy has air and ground surveillance capability, to include infrared sensors. Camouflage resources are available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Vehicles, equipment, and individual fighting positions cannot be detected by ground forces within small-arms range. The element's location or identity cannot be determined through aerial photographs or ground surveillance radar (GSR). The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader selects concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes. a. Ensured that vehicle operators used concealed routes whenever possible and followed and paralleled hedges, woods, fences, cultivated fields, and other natural terrain features. b. Made certain that the vehicle track signatures continued past their parked locations to other logical spots. 2. Operators maneuver vehicles along concealed routes. a. Used existing tracks. b. Avoided movement near terrain features (such as hilltops and road intersections) that were used as reference points by the enemy's ground and aerial fires. c. Obliterated the vehicle tracks where they turned into concealed positions. 3. Element personnel conceal vehicles and equipment. a. Positioned vehicles and equipment under natural cover or in shadows. b. Positioned vehicles and equipment so that their shapes blended in with their surroundings. c. Used natural material to break up the shapes or shadows of vehicles and equipment. d. Blended natural material with the surrounding area. e. Replaced cut vegetation when it withered or changed color. f. Used nets to create shadows. g. Used camouflage-screening systems to enhance natural material. h. Kept heat sources, such as generators, engines, and mess areas, under screening systems, even when using natural concealment. i. Covered shiny objects such as windshields, headlights, cab windows, and wet vehicle bodies. j. Dug in (if in desert or open terrain), when the situation permitted. k. Concealed the vehicle track signatures in snow-covered terrain. l. Disguised vehicles and equipment to change their appearance to resemble something of lesser or greater threat to the enemy. NOTE: A BIDS vehicle must be 100 meters from all obstructions when in operation.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. Leaders enforce camouflage discipline. a. Directed the avoidance of activity that changed the area's appearance or revealed the presence of military equipment. b. Enforced measures to maintain blackout conditions at night. c. Ensured that measures were taken to eliminate or reduce noise by muffling or masking it with the terrain, defilade positions, or shields. d. Ensured the prompt and complete police of debris from the area. * 5. Leaders know when opposing forces (OPFOR) surveillance is overhead. a. Received satellite transmission (SATRAN) reports from higher headquarters (HQ). b. Disseminated pertinent SATRAN information to subordinates. c. Incorporated this information into the tactical plan.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Defend the Unit's Position (07-3-C212.03-1002)
(FM 7-8) (FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is occupying prepared defensive positions. Intelligence reports indicate small opposing forces (OPFOR) elements have been sighted in the operational area. OPFOR patrols have increased in sector. The OPFOR attacks the platoon. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Main defensive positions are not surprised by the OPFOR. The platoon denies enemy penetration of the defensive positions and engages attacking units, forcing enemy withdrawal.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Observation posts (OPs) detect and correctly identify the enemy. a. Reported enemy activity before the main body was engaged. b. Reported using the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE) format.		
2. Unit personnel are alerted and occupy fighting positions. a. Actuated the alert plan according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). b. Occupied fighting positions within 1 minute of initial warning.		
3. The unit reports enemy contact. a. Reported enemy contact, using the SALUTE format, to company headquarters (HQ) within 1 minute of contact. b. Rendered additional situation reports (SITREPs) as the situation changed.		
4. OPs return to the unit's position. a. Used covered and concealed routes back to the defensive position. b. Did not become decisively engaged.		
5. The unit requests indirect-fire or close-air support, if available and applicable. a. Initiated the call for fire procedures within 1 minute of target acquisition. b. Adjusted the fire within 30 seconds of round impact.		
6. The platoon reacts to the enemy. a. Executed the obstacle plan according to the operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) (detonate demolitions, detonate claymore mines on order, or trigger line). b. Fired organic weapons as the enemy came into range or as ordered. c. Controlled the distribution and the rate of fire to ensure that a continuous volume of effective fire was placed on the enemy. d. Repositioned vehicles, squads, and individuals to alternate and supplementary positions using covered and concealed routes, as needed. e. Initiated final protective fire (FPF), if required. f. Directed counterattacks of reserves to eject enemy penetrations, if required. g. Defended the unit until the enemy was repelled or orders were received from higher HQ to disengage. h. Sustained no friendly casualties due to friendly fire.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
7. The platoon reacts to indirect fire. a. Initiated an alert by any member yelling, "Incoming". Also alerted subordinate elements by other communications means available. b. Sought protection under the overhead cover of the fighting positions. If in the open, personnel moved to a fighting position or out of the area. c. Moved vehicles out of the impact area to alternate positions, if applicable.		
* 8. Leaders reorganize the platoon. a. Reestablished the unit's chain of command. b. Submitted a SITREP to the company commander. c. Cross-leveled the unit to fill critical positions caused by casualties. d. Redistributed ammunition. e. Reoccupied OPs, key weapons, and key positions immediately. f. Treated and evacuated casualties, as necessary (all first aid common tasks should be reviewed). g. Submitted casualty reports. h. Updated the personnel roster. i. Processed enemy prisoner of war (EPW) captured materials.		
* 9. Leaders consolidate the platoon. a. Repositioned the OPs. b. Reestablished communications with the elements. c. Repositioned personnel. d. Reassigned sectors of fire to cover all gaps. e. Implemented the sleep and alert plan.		
10. The unit continues the mission. a. Continued the mission as soon as the tactical situation permitted. b. Continued on orders from the company commander.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-504-1008	Operate the M8A1 Alarm System	STP 21-24-SMCT
031-504-1013	Operate the M22 Automatic Chemical Agent Alarm	STP 21-24-SMCT
061-283-6003	Adjust Indirect Fire	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5704	Supervise Construction of a Fighting Position	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-430-0002	Conduct a Defense by a Squad	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-430-0003	Consolidate a Squad Following Enemy Contact while in the Defense	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-430-0006	Conduct a Defense by a Platoon	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-430-0007	Consolidate a Platoon Following Enemy Contact while in the Defense	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-430-0008	Reorganize a Platoon Following Enemy Contact while in the Defense	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Occupy an Assembly Area (AA) (07-3-C228.03-1005)
(FM 7-10) (FM 71-1) (FM 7-7)
(FM 7-8)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element has been given the order to move and occupy an AA in preparation for combat operations. The enemy has the capability to attack with indirect fire, close-air support (CAS), and platoon-size elements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The quartering party completes AA preparations and guides the element's main body into their respective positions no later than the time specified in the operation order (OPORD). Movement into the AA is uninterrupted, and elements are not held up outside the AA. The element's main body is not surprised by the enemy. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The element leader organizes a quartering party. a. Selected quartering-party personnel. b. Determined the requirement for a combat vehicle and a crew based on transportation and security requirements. c. Determined the essential equipment needed.		
* 2. The element leader briefs the quartering party. a. Identified the location of the AA. b. Gave specific instructions upon arrival at the AA. c. Stated the time of the main body's arrival at the AA. d. Identified the order of march. e. Stated the nuclear, biological, chemical (NBC) conditions. f. Issued a contingency plan in case of enemy contact. g. Established the MOPP level.		
3. The element quartering party moves along the march route. a. Maintained security. b. Reconnoitered the march route from the start point (SP) to the release point (RP). c. Monitored for NBC contamination. d. Marked obstacles and bypassed routes. e. Reported critical information to the element's quartering-party leader.		
4. The quartering party moves into the element's AA and prepares the area for the element's arrival. a. Selected and marked routes from the RP to the new location. b. Selected and posted guides in time to meet the main body. c. Marked entrances, exits, and internal routes. d. Marked vehicle positions where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provided 360-degree security. e. Marked or removed mines and obstacles. f. Organized and posted local security.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. The element occupies the AA. a. Moved quartering-party guides (waiting in covered and concealed positions) to guide the element to selected or designated areas without halting. b. Established and maintained local security from air and ground forces. 6. The element establishes the AA's perimeter. a. Established the priority of work, which may vary by the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian consideration (METT-TC) factors. b. Positioned vehicles and crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire. c. Established security on critical avenues of approach. d. Established communications between all positions (used wire communications if the time and the situation permitted). e. Prepared range cards. f. Constructed individual and crew-served fighting positions. g. Cleared fields of fire. h. Camouflaged positions. i. Emplaced the chemical-agent alarms and the early warning devices. 7. The element performs internal operation of the AA. a. Conducted preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles and equipment. b. Distributed ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment. c. Established personal-hygiene and field sanitation sites. d. Maintained noise, light, and camouflage discipline. e. Instituted a rest plan for element members and leaders. f. Inspected the AA. * 8. The element leader coordinates, as a minimum, with the element to the left and the right. a. Established responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent elements. b. Exchanged information on observation post locations and the element's signals. c. Coordinated local counterattacks. d. Developed a defensive plan and forward it to higher headquarters (HQ). 9. Leaders develop contingency plans. a. Developed an evacuation plan. b. Developed a plan of action on enemy contact. 10. The unit conducts rehearsals. a. Rehearsed the evacuation plan. b. Rehearsed actions on enemy contact.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1031	Use the Chemical Agent Monitor	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-3008	Implement Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-0513	Select Temporary Fighting Positions	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-5703	Construct Individual Fighting Positions	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-326-5704	Supervise Construction of a Fighting Position	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5705	Establish an Observation Post	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5775	Coordinate with an Adjacent Platoon	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0815	Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-331-0852	Clear a Field of Fire	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY

TASK: Employ Physical Security Measures (03-3-0016)
(FM 3-19.30) (FM 20-3) (FM 34-60)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Physical security measures are needed to guard vulnerable information and operations. The opposing forces (OPFOR) patrol attempts a reconnaissance or intrusion into the perimeter. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit maintains 24-hour security in its assigned area and is not surprised by an enemy force.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The BIDS team leader plans and consolidates a unit physical-security plan.		
* 2. The BIDS team leader prepared and carried out a security plan for each platoon area and squad location within 1 hour of the unit's occupation. The plan included the-- a. Prevention of vehicle entry to the command post (CP). b. Selection and manning of the unit's perimeter positions that detect and report OPFOR intrusion or observation of the CP's perimeter. c. Prevention of civilian access to the unit and the defensive areas. d. Maintenance of communications between the perimeter posts and the reaction force. e. Initial response to a ground attack. f. Primary and alternate means of communications from the security headquarters (HQ) to the dismount point and perimeter posts.		
3. The unit operates a guard force. a. Assigned personnel to establish communications between the guard commander and sentry posts. b. Posted sentries to stop unauthorized entry into restricted areas. c. Conducted random exterior patrols to find and neutralize OPFOR intruders before they breach the unit's CP perimeter.		
4. The unit reacts to an enemy ground attack. a. Occupied preplanned positions. b. Reported the attack to higher HQ. c. Executed the planned response. d. Denied intrusion into the CP's perimeter.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-331-0801	Challenge Persons Entering Your Area	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-410-0019	Control Organic Fires	STP 3-54B34-SM-TG STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Plan the Employment of a Biological Detection (BD) Platoon (03-3-0018)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is tasked to support combat operations to detect or identify biological hazards within the corps's area of operations (AO). They also collect suspected samples of biological contamination and prepare them for evacuation and continental United States (CONUS) shipment for laboratory analysis, initiate chain-of-custody procedures to safeguard suspected biological samples, and submit applicable reports to subordinate units and higher headquarters (HQ). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BIDS team leader or the platoon sergeant is required to conduct initial and subsequent planning for employment of the biological detection teams and must receive and analyze the current mission statement and apply the commander's intent and concept of operations. The BIDS team leader or key leaders must conduct appropriate reconnaissance of possible routes and establish primary and alternate position areas for biological surveillance operations. The BIDS team leader or the platoon sergeant must identify which surveillance technique (area surveillance or critical node [point detection]) is required for all assigned missions in support of combat operations. The BIDS team leader or the platoon sergeant must include troop-leading procedures and follow established command and control (C2) functions according to the operation order (OPORD) and the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The BIDS team leader receives an OPORD from higher HQ. a. Analyzed the OPORD for all critical information. b. Checked the mission statement. c. Verified the commander's intent and the concept of the operation for the stated mission. d. Checked the map and overlays to determine the initial sites and locations for Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) surveillance operations. e. Conducted a map and ground reconnaissance of the primary and alternate travel routes. f. Reconnoitered the initial biological surveillance sites and identified primary and alternate surveillance sites within the location. 2. The platoon sergeant conducted troop-leading procedures. a. Received a warning order from the platoon leader that included the mission. b. Analyzed the mission using the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC). c. Clarified all unclear, vague, or misunderstood information in the warning order. d. Used the one-third/two-thirds rule to fully develop the plan. e. Used the backward-planning technique to plan the mission execution. f. Used a minimum of one-third of the total time to plan for the mission. g. Used at least two-thirds of the total time to prepare for the mission execution.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Checked the warning order to determine what time the mission started.		
* 3. The BIDS team leader issued a warning order to all key leaders and unit members. a. Squad and team leaders prepared for the mission execution. b. Unit members followed all instructions contained in the unit's TSOP. c. BIDS team leaders ensured that all soldiers performed preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on individual equipment and vehicles. d. Unit members ensured that all fuel cans and water cans were filled. e. Ensured that rations and ammunition (basic loads) were available and ready for loading onto vehicles. f. BIDS team leaders ensured that all equipment and supplies were loaded onto vehicles according to the vehicle load plans and the unit's TSOP.		
* 4. The BIDS team leader or the platoon sergeant makes a tentative plan based on METT-TC factors. a. Used METT-TC factors to develop a tentative unit plan. b. Included the starting time and the start point (SP) to the designated unit location. c. Identified all areas selected for reconnoitering.		
* 5. The BIDS team leader or the platoon sergeant estimates the situation. a. Included the following items in the estimate: (1) A detailed mission analysis. (2) A detailed situation analysis and possible courses of actions (COAs). (3) A detailed analysis of the enemy's situations and possible COAs. (4) An evaluation of his unit's situations (troops, resources, and available time). (5) Detailed COAs based on the relationships of friendly forces. b. Conducted war games to evaluate the various COAs for completeness and soundness. c. Compared the various COAs to determine the best COA.		
* 6. The BIDS team leader or the platoon sergeant starts necessary unit movement to various locations. a. Conducted planning for moving the units. b. Conducted a personal reconnaissance. c. Ensured the availability of supplies to sustain mission operations.		
* 7. The BIDS team leader or the platoon sergeant conducts an actual ground reconnaissance of the designated surveillance sites. a. Took the quartering party forward to reconnoiter the designated area. b. Decided on the actual areas to set up the biological detection surveillance sites. c. Set up (along with the quartering party) the area for occupation, if time permitted.		
* 8. The BIDS team leader or the platoon sergeant plans biological detection operations. a. Considered biological-agent cloud behavior characteristics, such as the-- (1) Low agent requirement. (2) Large area coverage. (3) Effects of weather and terrain on the biological-agent cloud. (4) Varying rates-of-effect pertaining to the biological-agent cloud. b. Was aware of biological agent characteristics, such as the--		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Wide range of effects. (2) Relative ease to produce. (3) Subjection to rapid decay. (4) Difficulty in detection. c. Gave great consideration for nondestructive delivery means for the biological-agent cloud. d. Gave careful consideration for pervasive actions pertaining to biological-agent cloud activity. e. Was prepared to make recommendations to the commander for the implementation of vaccines and other treatment procedures (when possible and time permitted). f. Determined primary reporting procedures. g. Reported all stages of readiness as the biological plan was completed. * 9. The BIDS team leader or the platoon sergeant completes the plan using the five-paragraph format field order or a matrix order as a guide. *10. The BIDS team leader issues the mission order to key leaders. *11. The BIDS team leader or the platoon sergeant supervises the unit's preparation and activity.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Identify Biological Surveillance Sites (03-3-0019)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Subversion and espionage activities may occur. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BIDS team leader is required to conduct a reconnaissance to physically locate the area and to select the appropriate ground location for the biological surveillance site. The BIDS team leader is required to report to the unit commander and higher headquarters (HQ) when the site is located and occupied. The Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) team must detect and collect suspected biological aerosol sample.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The BIDS team leader, platoon sergeant, and/or team leader conducts a map and ground reconnaissance for the biological surveillance site.		
2. The BIDS team leader coordinates with the supported unit's chemical officer and the higher HQ battle staff Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) in selecting the biological detection surveillance site for operations.		
3. The BIDS team leader, platoon sergeant, and/or team leader visually selects terrain that will channel the airflow towards the biological detector collector. He-- a. Inspected the terrain visually to ensure that the BIDS would receive maximum airflow of possible contamination hazards during surveillance operations. b. Determined the downwind side of the biological surveillance site. c. Determined what facilities were downwind of the BIDS surveillance sites and selected locations upwind to set up the BIDS. d. Considered natural and man-made terrain features such as hills, valleys, and rows of buildings to aid in channeling the airflow for collecting and analyzing suspected aerosol samples for biological hazards.		
4. The BIDS team leader, platoon sergeant, and team leader consider the commander's intent, the concept of operation, and the overall scheme of maneuver for the types of biological surveillance site locations. They -- a. Ensured that the sites supported the commander's intent, the concept of the operation, and the overall scheme of maneuver. b. Ensured that the sites allowed for smooth transmission of communications between appropriate units and support of the unit's higher battle staff (the commander and Intelligence officer [US Army] [S2] and the S3.		
5. The BIDS team leader, platoon sergeant, and team leader discuss operational security during the selection process for the biological surveillance site.		
6. The BIDS team leader or the platoon sergeant instructs the team leader to prepare the set up of the BIDS biological surveillance site. The team leader-- a. Selected primary site locations. b. Selected alternate site locations.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Selected supplemental site locations. d. Ensured that the BIDS location supported the transportation (trafficability) network for the rapid evacuation of samples or displacement of the system, if required. e. Coordinated with the support unit for security of the BIDS while operating the support unit's area of operation (AO). f. Ensured that the selected BIDS site was protected from the enemy's direct and indirect-fire range and capability. g. Ensured that the selected site was suitable for effective communication for all applicable units and the supported unit's higher HQ battle staff (S2 or S3). h. Selected an area to conduct operational decontamination when the unit was contaminated during its primary mission of biological surveillance operations. i. Drivers ensured that BIDS vehicles were positioned to face the prevailing wind. j. The team members positioned vehicles and removed the generator from the vehicle and placed in an upwind direction at a distance of at least 40 feet from the BIDS vehicle.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-503-1030	Prepare the Chemical Agent Monitor for Operation	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-1031	Use the Chemical Agent Monitor	STP 21-1-SMCT
031-503-3008	Implement Mission Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-329-1006	Navigate From One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Dismounted	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-331-0815	Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Conduct a Critical Node Array Surveillance for Biological Hazards (03-3-0020)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Opposing forces (OPFOR) are capable of aerial surveillance by aircraft and ground surveillance by Threat Level I or II. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BIDS team is required to locate and detect biological aerosol agents, and report the results to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the operation order (OPORD) instructions and the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The BIDS team leader, platoon sergeant, or team leader conducts a reconnaissance of the site. 2. The BIDS team leader or platoon sergeant determines the numbers of detection systems required based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. 3. Team leaders determine the on-site surveillance area for each Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) within their assigned area. a. Occupied each site with a BIDS. b. Conducted continuous monitoring operations. c. Conducted detection, identification, and sampling operations as required. d. Submitted contamination reports to higher HQ as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Conduct an Area Array Surveillance for Biological Hazards (03-3-0021)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Opposing forces (OPFOR) have integrated electronic warfare (EW) and firepower. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit is required to locate and detect biological aerosol agents, and report the results to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the operation order (OPORD) instructions and the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The BIDS team leader, platoon sergeant, or team leader conducts a reconnaissance of the area. 2. The BIDS team leader or platoon sergeant determines the numbers of detection systems required based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. 3. Team leaders determines the on-site surveillance area for each Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) within their assigned area. 4. Team leaders emplace each BIDS upwind of the surveillance site. a. Monitored meteorological conditions. b. Repositioned the BIDS based upon changes in METT-TC conditions. c. Conducted continuous monitoring operations. d. Conducted detection, identification, and sampling operations as required. e. Submitted contamination reports to higher HQ, as required.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Conduct Biological Detection Operations (Respond to Aerodynamic Particle Sizer [APS] Alert) (03-3-0023)
(FM 21-11) (FM 21-10-1) (FM 3-5)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon has been conducting reconnaissance operations. Soldiers are wounded, killed, or missing in action (MIA). Some soldiers have been captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Higher headquarters (HQ) is informed of the platoon's strength and casualty data using appropriate forms as expeditiously as time permits in keeping with the tactical situation. The BIDS team leader or the platoon sergeant accounts for all assigned and attached personnel. Then platoon members provide treatment for casualties. All casualties are transported without causing further injuries and evacuated as soon as the tactical situation permits.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) teams respond to an APS alert. a. Operator #1pressed the SAVE SAMPLE button on the biological sampler and liquid sampler. NOTE: The first liquid sample will be ready in about 1 minute. Check to make sure the biological sampler indicator is turning. b. Operator #2 checked the Tactical Meteorological (TACMET) System display and recorded the meteorological conditions into the logbook according to the standing operating procedure (SOP). NOTE: These conditions will be reported back to HQ after the mission. c. Operator #1 gave the liquid sample to operator #2. d. Operator #2 took 20 microliters of the sample and put it into a new conical tube using a pipette and handed the original sample back to operator #1. e. Operator #1 tested the sample using the flow cytometer (FCM). f. Operator #2 used the liquid sample he prepared and tested it with the microluminometer. NOTE: Mixing must be done as quickly as possible to help improve the test results. g. Both operators took steps to confirm results. (1) If either the FCM or the microluminometer test was negative, repeated steps 1c through 1f for liquid samples #2 and #3. If either test was positive, included a wet collector in the evacuation package. (2) If all FCM and microluminometer test results were negative for all three samples and the high volume APS response was also negative, go to step h. h. Operator #1 discarded any remaining samples from the liquid sampler according to the unit's SOP. (1) Flushed the FCM with distilled water 3 times, following three successive negative analyses (conical tubes #1, #2, and #3).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Both operators discarded all samples collected and tested during the high-volume aerodynamic particle sizer (HVAPS) alert sequence according to the unit's SOP. (3) Prepared the liquid sampler with six labeled tubes. (4) Aborted the biological sampler and prepared it for the next alert sequence. NOTE: The wet collector may be used up to three times when test results on the microluminometer, the FCM, and the HVAPS are negative. i. Operator #1 observed the HVAPS response monitor, selected the liquid sample conical tube (threshold system [THS]) or two tubes (hand held assay [HHA] test device) for which the HVAPS response monitor was strongest, and passed the samples to operator #2. Operators took the following actions if any test results on the microluminometer, FCM, or HVAPS were positive: (1) THS Primary. Operator #2 tested the sample on the THS. (2) HHA Primary. Operator #2 used the P-1000 pipette and combined the two samples into a single conical tube, added two drops of sample additive, gently tapped the conical tube to combine the sample, and tested the combined sample on the HHA test device by adding 100 microliters of sample into each of the HHA test device wells. j. Operator #1 placed 10 drops of sodium hypochlorite (bleach) into a conical tube and rinsed the FCM, then placed 10 drops of distilled water in a conical tube and rinsed the FCM three times. (1) Placed six new labeled tubes in the liquid sampler carousel. (2) Flushed the FCM three times with sterile water and discarded remaining samples from the FCM according to the unit's SOP. (3) Continued to monitor the APS alert indicator or went to BIDS shutdown procedures, depending on the mission. k. Operators #1 and #2 performed the following, if either the high volume APS, FCM, or microluminometer response was positive: (1) Operator #1 gave operator #2 the liquid sample taken when the high volume APS response was the strongest. (2) Operator #2 used the THS to test the selected LS. (a) If the THS was nonmission capable (NMC), used the HHA kit tickets. (b) Recorded the results in the logbook. (c) Informed the unit leader by high frequency (HF) or very high frequency (VHF) radio (according to the local SOP) that a positive result was detected. l. Operator #1 removed the wet collector from the biological sampler, installed a new wet collector, and prepared the biological sampler for another alert sequence, if any of the microluminometer, the FCM, or HVAPS results were positive when the biological sampler SAMPLE light went off. (1) Removed the wet collector and handed it to operator #2 when the biological sampler SAMPLE light went off. (2) Inserted a new wet collector. (3) Reported results to the unit leader when the THS or HHA kit ticket test was completed by operator #2. m. Operator #2 stored the wet collector (handed over by operator #1) in the driver's side cooler. Operators #1 and #2 completed the alert sequence as follows: (1) Operator #1 prepared the positive wet collector for sample evacuation and passed the prepared wet collector to operator #2.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Operator #2 placed the prepared wet collector in the driver's side cooler pending disposition instructions. (3) If the HHA test device was used, operator #2 prepared the reacted HHA test device for sample evacuation and placed it in the driver's side cooler pending disposition instructions. (4) Operators #1 and #2 prepared THS, FCM, and high-volume APS disk; THS and FCM printout; and the BIDS incident report and placed them inside a disk mailer according to sample evacuation procedures. (5) Operators #1 or #2 prepared Department of the Army (DA) Form 4137 and maintained paperwork pending evacuation instructions. (6) Operators #1 or #2 completed all BIDS logbook entries and submitted the report to higher HQ according to the unit's SOP. n. Operator #1continued to monitor for HVAPS alerts, conducted reduced capability monitoring (reduced capability protocols), or went to BIDS shutdown procedures, depending on the mission. He rinsed the FCM as follows: (1) Rinsed 3 times with one 1 milliliter of sterile water in each of three conical tubes, if the monitored results were negative. (2) Rinsed 1 time with 1-milliliter conical tube of bleach and 3 times with 1 milliliter of sterile water if the monitored results were positive. 2. Depending on the mission, the BIDS team continues to monitor the APS alert or go to BIDS shutdown procedures.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1007	Perform First Aid for Burns	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1016	Put on a Field or Pressure Dressing	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1017	Put on a Tourniquet	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1025	Perform First Aid for an Open Abdominal Wound	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1026	Perform First Aid for an Open Chest Wound	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1033	Perform First Aid for an Open Head Wound	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1034	Perform First Aid for a Suspected Fracture	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1040	Transport a Casualty Using a One-Man Carry	STP 21-1-SMCT
081-831-1041	Transport a Casualty Using a Two-Man Carry or an Improvised Litter	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Conduct Alternate Biological Detection Operations (When Flow Cytometer [FCM] and/or Microluminometer is Nonmission Capable [NMC]) (03-3-0024)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is supporting combat operations. The unit is tasked to conduct biological monitoring and sampling operations. Communication is established, and reports are being received from subordinate units and transmitted to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). Enemy forces have the capability to employ biological weapons and may have already employed them. The biological detection platoon is tasked to set up operations in the corps's area of operations (AO), conduct biological surveillance operations to detect biological aerosols, and submit findings and results to higher HQ according to operation order (OPORD) instructions and the TSOP. Alternate biological detection procedures are initiated upon an alert when it is discovered that either the FCM, the microluminometer, or both are NMC. Troubleshooting procedures for the FCM and/or microluminometer are initiated. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The (BIDS) team will conduct alternate detection protocols until the FCM and/or microluminometer is mission capable or the mission is terminated.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The FCM is NMC: a. The BIDS team continued the detection mission without the FCM. b. Operator #1 began troubleshooting the FCM and reported to higher HQ. c. If either the aerodynamic particle sizer (APS) or the microluminometer indicated a possible biological agent attack, the BIDS team conducted identification procedures as follows: (1) Operator #2 conducted identification procedures by processing the strongest sample through the threshold system (THS). (2) Operator #2 analyzed the results and recorded them in the log. (a) If tests on the microluminometer or the high volume aerodynamic particle sizer (HVAPS) response monitor was POSITIVE, operator #1 selected the conical tubes that corresponded to the strongest responses on the HVAPS monitor and passed them to operator #2. (b) Operator #2 combined the two samples into a single conical tube, added two drops of sample additive, and tested the sample by adding 100 microliters of sample into each of the hand held assay (HHA) test device wells. (c) Operator #1 conducted a test on the HHA test device. (3) The BIDS team leader notified the platoon HQ of the results. (4) (Optional backup) Used the HHA test. Operator #2 initiated identification procedures using the HHA tickets. (5) Operator #2 analyzed and recorded the results. (6) The BIDS team notified the platoon HQ of the results. d. Operator #1 or #2 recorded the testing results in the BIDS logbook and on the BIDS incident report.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. If either the HVAPS response monitor or the microluminometer response was POSITIVE, operators #1 and #2 performed the following: (1) When the biological sampler light went off, operator #1 pulled the wet collector, installed a new wet collector, and prepared the biological sample for another HVAPS alert sequence. (2) Operator #1 prepared the POSITIVE sample wet collector for evacuation and placed it in the driver's side cooler pending evacuation instruction. (3) Operator #2 prepared the reacted HHA test device for evacuation (when used) and placed it in the driver's side cooler pending evacuation instruction. (4) Operators #1 and #2 prepared THS, FCM, and APS disks; THS and FCM printouts; and a BIDS incident report (BIR) for evacuation. (5) Operator #1 or #2 prepared Department of the Army (DA) Form 4137 for sample evacuation pending disposition. f. Operator #1 or #2 submitted the required report to higher HQ according to unit SOP.		
2. The microluminometer is NMC: a. The BIDS team continued its detection mission without the microluminometer. b. Operator #2 began troubleshooting the microluminometer and reported to higher HQ. c. If either the APS or the FCM indicated possible biological agent attack, the BIDS team conducted identification procedures as stated in # 1 above. (1) THS primary. (a) The BIDS team responded to HVAPS alert. Operator #1 pressed SAVE SAMPLE button on the liquid sampler and biological sampler. (b) Operator #1 tested conical tubes #1, #2, and #3 from the liquid sampler on the FCM. (c) If tests on the FCM and the HVAPS response were NEGATIVE, discarded remaining samples and tested samples according to the unit SOP. (d) If tests on the FCM or the HVAPS response were POSITIVE, operator #1 selected the conical tube that corresponded to the strongest response on the HVAPS response monitor and passed to operator #2 for testing on the THS. (e) Operator #1 conducted tests on the THS. (2) HHA primary. (a) The BIDS team responded to a HVAPS alert. Operator #1 pressed SAVE SAMPLE button on the liquid sampler and biological sampler. (b) Operator #1 tested conical tubes #1, #2, and #3 from the liquid sampler on the FCM. (c) If tests on the FCM and the HVAPS response monitor were NEGATIVE, discarded remaining samples and tested samples IAW unit SOP. (d) If tests on the FCM or the HVAPS response monitor were POSITIVE, operator #1 selected the conical tubes that corresponded to the strongest responses on the HVAPS response monitor and passed them to operator #2.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(e) Operator #2 combined the two samples into a single conical tube, added two drops of sample additive, and tested the sample by adding 100 microliter of sample into each of the HHA test device wells. (f) Operator #1 conducted a test on the HHA test device. d. Operator #1 and #2 recorded the results of testing in the BIDS logbook, and on the BIDS incident report, and reported to higher HQ. e. If positive results were obtained, completed the alert sequence according to 1e(1) through (5) and 1f above. 3. Both the FCM and the microluminometer are NMC. a. The BIDS team proceeded to use the HHA kit tickets and the conical tube from the liquid sampler corresponding to the highest concentration reading on the APS monitor. b. The BIDS team continued the detection mission without the FCM and the microluminometer. c. The BIDS team began troubleshooting the FCM and the microluminometer and reported to higher HQ. d. Operator #1 reported the FCM and the microluminometer as NMC to higher HQ and operators #1 and #2 began troubleshooting the FCM and the microluminometer. e. The BIDS team reported the results of the HHA kit tickets to higher HQ. f. If the HVAPS response monitor indicated a possible biological agent attack, the BIDS team conducted identification procedures as follows: (1) The BIDS team responded to an HVAPS alert. Operator #1 pressed SAVE SAMPLE button on the liquid sampler and the biological sampler. (2) Operator #1 evaluated the HVAPS response monitor, selected the two conical tubes from the liquid sampler that correspond to the strongest response on the HVAPS response monitor, and passed them to operator #2. (3) Operator #2 combined the two samples into a single conical tube, added two drops of sample additive, and tested the sample by adding 100 microliters of sample into each of the HHA test device wells. (4) Operator #2 conducted a test on the HHA. g. Operators #1 and #2 recorded the testing results in the BIDS logbook and on the BIDS incident report. h. If positive results were obtained, the BIDS team completed the alert sequence according to paragraph 1e(1) through (5) and 1f above.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Conduct Alternate Biological Sample Collection Operations (When Biological Sampler is Nonmission Capable [NMC]) (03-3-0025)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is supporting combat operations. The unit is tasked to conduct biological monitoring and sampling operations. Communication is established, and reports are being received from subordinate units and transmitted to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). The enemy forces have the capability to employ biological weapons and may have already employed them. The biological detection platoon is tasked to set up operations in the corps's area of operations (AO), conduct biological surveillance operations to detect biological aerosols, and submit findings and results to higher HQ according to the operation order (OPORD) instructions and the TSOP. Alternate biological sample collection procedures are initiated upon an alert when it is discovered that the biological sampler is NMC. Troubleshooting procedures for the biological sampler are initiated according to technical manual (TM) 3-6665-349-12&P. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) team will collect appropriate samples for analysis and evacuation purposes based on alternate protocols until the liquid sampler is mission capable or the mission is terminated.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Upon an aerodynamic particle sizer (APS) alert, operator #1 initiates biological and liquid samplers. a. Discovering that the biological sampler was NMC, operator #1 continued the detection mission. b. The BIDS team reported biological sampler failure to higher HQ. c. Operator #1 began troubleshooting the biological sampler. (1) Threshold system (THS) primary. (a) The BIDS team responded to a high-volume aerodynamic partial sizer (HVAPS) alert. Operator #1 pressed SAVE SAMPLE button on the liquid sampler. (b) Operator #1 tested conical tubes #1, #2, and #3 from the liquid sampler on the microluminometer and the flow cytometer (FCM). (c) When tests on the microluminometer, the FCM, and the HVAPS response monitor were NEGATIVE, discarded remaining samples and tested samples according to the unit standing operating procedures (SOP). (d) When tests on the microluminometer, the FCM, or the HVAPS response monitor were POSITIVE, operator #1 selected the conical tube that corresponded to the strongest response on the HVAPS monitor and passed it to operator #2 for testing on the THS. (e) Operator #1 conducted a test on the THS. (2) Hand held assay (HHA) primary. (a) The BIDS team responded to a HVAPS alert. Operator #1 pressed the SAVE SAMPLE button on the liquid sampler.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(b) Operator #1 tested conical tubes #1, #2, and #3 from the liquid sampler on the microluminometer and the FCM. (c) When tests on the microluminometer, the FCM, and the HVAPS response monitor were NEGATIVE, discarded the remaining samples and tested samples according to the unit SOP. (d) When tests on the microluminometer or the FCM or the HVAPS response monitor were POSITIVE, operator #1 selected the conical tubes that corresponded to the strongest responses on the HVAPS monitor and passed them to operator #2. (e) Operator #2 combined the two samples into a single conical tube, added two drops of sample additive, and tested the sample by adding 100 microliters of sample into each of the HHA test device wells. (f) Operator #1 conducted a test on the HHA test device. d. Operator #1 or #2 recorded the results of testing in the BIDS logbook and on the BIDS incident report. e. If either the microluminometer, the FCM or the HVAPS response monitor was positive, operators #1 and #2 performed the following: (1) Upon a positive detection and/or identification of a potential biological agent, operator #1 prepared sample tubes from the liquid sampler for evacuation as follows: (a) Operator #1 selected sample tubes that were not used during the FCM and/or microluminometer analysis and THS or HHA testing. (b) Using the P-1000 pipette with a 1,000-milliliters pipette tip, operator #1 transferred the contents of all remaining LS conical tube samples into one conical tube. (c) Operator #1 capped the combined conical tube sample and prepared it for evacuation (T&EO 3-3-0028), and placed it in the driver's side cooler pending disposition instructions. (d) Operator #2 prepared the reacted HHA test device for evacuation (if used) and placed in the driver's side cooler pending disposition instructions. (2) Operators #1 and #2 prepared THS, FCM, and APS disks; THS and FCM printouts; and the BIDS incident report (BIR) for evacuation. (3) Operators #1 or #2 prepared Department of the Army (DA) Form 4137 for sample evacuation pending disposition. f. Operators #1 or #2 submitted the required report to higher HQ according to unit SOP. 2. Upon a positive detection and/or identification of a potential biological agent, operator #1 prepares sample tubes from the liquid sampler for evacuation. a. Operator #1 selected sample tubes that were not used on the FCM or microluminometer analysis. b. Using P-1000 pipette with a 1,000-milliliter pipette tip attached, the operator punctured the seal of a new wet collector. c. Operator #1 transferred the contents of all remaining liquid sampler conical tubes to the wet collector. d. The wet collector was resealed and prepared for evacuation.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**M**	**TOTAL**
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Conduct Alternate Biological Sample Collection Operations (When Liquid Sampler is Nonmission Capable [NMC]) (03-3-0026)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is supporting combat operations. The unit is tasked to conduct biological monitoring and sampling operations. Communication is established, and reports are being received from subordinate units and transmitted to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). The enemy forces have the capability to employ biological weapons and may have already employed them. The biological detection platoon is tasked to set up operations in the corps's area of operations (AO), conduct biological surveillance operations and submit findings and results to higher HQ according to the operation order (OPORD) instructions and the TSOP. Alternate biological sample collection procedures are initiated upon an aerodynamic particle sizer (APS) alert when it is discovered that the liquid sampler is NMC. Troubleshooting procedures for the liquid sampler are initiated according to technical manual (TM) 3-6665-349-12&P. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) team will collect appropriate samples for analysis and evacuation purposes based on alternate protocols until the liquid sampler is mission capable or the mission is terminated.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Upon an APS alert, operator #1 initiates biological and liquid samplers. a. Discovering that the liquid sample was NMC, operator #1 initiated alternate sample collections. b. Set the sample period time select minutes to 10 minutes on the biological sampler. c. Prepared new wet collector as follows: (1) Indicator. (a) Obtained a new wet collector. Opened the collector cap and discarded the contents in a waste container. Rinsed the collector as follows: filled the collector 1/3 full with sterile water, closed the cap, shook the collector a few times, then dumped the water into a waste container. (b) Labeled the wet collector used for the alternate sampling mode (20 milliliters). (c) Obtained an empty 50-milliliter tube that was used during the preparation for use with the threshold system (THS). Rinsed the tube with sterile water. (d) Measured 20 milliliters of collection fluid in the 50 milliliter conical tube and poured it into the wet collector. Installed the cap on the wet collector. (e) Installed the wet collector and pressed the SAVE SAMPLE button if the alert sounded at step one. (f) At the end of the sampling period, removed the wet collector.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(g) Retrieved three 500-microliter samples from the wet collector using the P-1000 pipette with a 1,000-microliter pipette tip and added the 500 microliter samples into three conical tubes. (h) Analyzed the sample in conical tube #1 with the microluminometer and the flow cytometer (FMC). (i) If any results were positive, analyzed the sample in conical tube #2 with the THS. If all results were negative, depending on mission, continued to monitor the APS alert. (2) THS system primary. (a) At the end of the sampling period, operator #1 removed the wet collector and installed another wet collector prepared according to paragraph 1c(1)(a) through (d) above in preparation for the high-volume aerodynamic particle sizer (HVAPS) alert. (b) Operator #1 used the P-1000 pipette with a 1,000-microliter pipette tip to retrieve two 500 microliter samples from the wet collector and placed the samples into two conical tubes. NOTE: To retrieve the samples, tilt the wet collector at a slight angle and insert the P-1000 pipette with 1000-microliter pipette tip attached into the hole closest to the rim and withdraw the samples. After dispensing the sample into the conical tubes, eject the pipette tip into the waste container and thoroughly clean the P-1000 pipette with an alcohol wipe before returning it to the storage block. (c) Operators #1 and #2 tested conical tube #1 on the microluminometer and FCM. (d) When tests on the microluminometer and the FCM and the HVAPS response monitor were NEGATIVE, discarded the remaining sample and tested samples according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP). NOTE: The wet collector may be reused by completing the preparation actions in paragraph 1c(1)(a) through 1c(1)(d) above. (e) When tests on the microluminometer or the FCM or the HVAPS response monitor were POSITIVE, operator #1 selected conical tube #1 and passed it to operator #2 for testing on the THS. (f) Operator #2 conducted test on the TS. (3) Hand held assay (HHA) primary. (a) The BIDS team responded to a HVAPS alert. Operator #1 pressed SAVE SAMPLE button on the biological sampler. (b) At the end of the sampling period, operator #1 removed the wet collector and installed another wet collector prepared according to paragraph 1c(1)(a) through (d) above in preparation for an HVAPS alert. (c) Operator #1 used the P-1000 pipette with 1000-microliter pipette tip to retrieve one 500-microliter sample from the wet collector and one 1000-microliter sample and placed the samples into two conical tubes. NOTE: To retrieve the samples, tilt the wet collector at a slight angle and insert the P-1000 pipette with 1,000-microliter pipette tip attached into the hole closest to the rim and withdraw the samples. After dispensing the sample into the conical tubes, eject the pipette tip into the waste container and thoroughly clean the P-1000 pipette with an alcohol wipe before returning it to the storage block. (d) Operators #1 and #2 tested conical tube #1 on the microluminometer and FCM.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(e) When tests on the microluminometer and the FCM and the HVAPS response monitor were NEGATIVE, discarded the remaining samples and tested samples according to the unit SOP. (f) When test(s) on the microluminometer or the FCM or the HVAPS response monitor was POSITIVE, operator #1 selected conical tube #2 and passed it to operator #2 for testing on the HHA test device. (g) Operator #2 conducted a test on the HHA test device. (h) Operator #1 or #2 recorded the testing results in the BIDS logbook and on the BIDS incident report. 2. If the liquid sampler becomes mission capable, the team returns to normal sampling procedures. 3. If either the microluminometer, the FCM, or the HVAPS response monitor is POSITIVE, operators #1 and #2 performs the following: a. Upon a POSITIVE detection and/or identification of a potential biological agent, operator #1 prepared the POSITIVE wet collector evacuation and placed it in the driver's side cooler pending disposition instructions. b. Operator #2 prepared the reacted HHA test device (if used) for evacuation and placed it in the driver's side cooler pending disposition instructions. c. Operators #1 and #2 prepared THS, FCM, and APS disks; THS and FCM printouts; and the BIDS Incident Report (BIR) for evacuation. d. Operator #1 or #2 prepared Department of the Army (DA) Form 4137 for sample evacuation pending disposition and maintained it with the designated sample. e. Operator #1 or #2 submitted the required report to higher HQ according to the unit SOP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Conduct Continuous Monitoring Operations (When Aerodynamic Particle Sizer [APS] is Nonmission Capable [NMC]) (03-3-0027)
(TM 3-6665-349-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is supporting combat operations. The Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) team has determined that the HVAPS is NMC upon initial assessment. Continuous monitoring procedures are initiated along with troubleshooting procedures on the HVAPS according to TM 3-6665-349-12&P. Communications are established, and reports are being received from subordinate units and transmitted to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). Enemy forces have the capability to employ biological weapons and may have already employed them. The biological detection platoon is tasked to set up operations within the corps's area of operations (AO), conduct biological surveillance operations, and submit findings and results to higher HQ according to the operation order (OPORD) instructions and the TSOP. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BIDS team is required to properly conduct continuous monitoring operations until the APS is mission capable or the mission is terminated.

NOTE: Depending upon the theater of operation, it has been determined that the threshold system (THS) or the hand held assay (HHA) may be designated as the primary specific detection component.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The HVAPS is NMC for less than 10 minutes. a. Operator #1 has determined that the HVAPS is expected to be NMC for less than 10 minutes. (1) The THS was the primary specific-detection component. NOTE: The BIDS crew is operating in a theater where the threat requires the use of the THS to be the primary biological warfare (BW) specific-detection component. The HHA is the alternate BW specific-detection component. (a) Continuously ran the liquid sampler using the manual operating procedure. (b) Tested sample Nos. 2, 4, and 6 using the microluminometer and the flow cytometer (FCM). (c) If any tube came up as a positive detection, the next tube from the liquid sampler was used for identification using the THS. (d) If any detection or identification was POSITIVE, combined all remaining tubes from the liquid sampler into one tube, prepared it for evacuation and stored it in the drivers side cooler. (e) If all detections were NEGATIVE, continued this mode of operation through two cycles on the liquid sampler. (2) The hand-held assay (HHA) was the primary specific-detection component. NOTE: The BIDS crew is operating in a theater where the threat requires the use of the HHA as the primary BW specific-detection component. The THS is the alternate BW specific-detection component.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Continuously ran the liquid sampler using the manual operating procedure. (b) Tested sample Nos. 2, 4, and 6 using the microluminometer and the FCM. (c) If any tube came up as a positive detection, the next two tubes from the liquid sampler were mixed into a tube and used for identification using the HHA. (d) If the second test was POSITIVE, combined all remaining tubes from the liquid sampler into one tube and the HHA for evacuation and stored it in the drivers side cooler. (e) If all detections were NEGATIVE, continued this mode of operation through two cycles on the liquid sampler.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Prepare a Biological Sample for Evacuation (03-3-0028)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon takes appropriate actions to treat and evacuate personnel; maintain, recover, and evacuate equipment; and conduct resupply operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit is required to locate and detect biological aerosol agents. The sample must be accurately documented, and a chain of custody must be established. The unit must ensure that the sample is properly sealed, stored, and secured. The unit must notify higher headquarters (HQ) when the sample is ready for evacuation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. Operators #1 and #2 ensure that 40 to 50 milliliters of the biological sample are contained in the appropriate plastic or Teflon container, such as the-- a. Biological sampler cup (wet collector). Operator #1-- (1) Removed the wet collector (at the end of the sampling period) from the biological sampler and installed a new wet collector or one that had been prepared for the current operating protocol (standard protocol), alternate sampling, or continuous monitoring. (2) Replaced the wet collector grommet and cap and visually observed the wet collector to ensure that it was securely sealed and there were no signs of sample leakage. (3) Obtained a length of laboratory film (approximately 8 inches x 4 inches) and wrapped the wet collector as follows: (a) Positioned the laboratory film near, but not on, the wet collector key with about 1 inch of the film below the lower lid and 1 inch above the cap (this should secure all openings from any leakages when the wrapping is completed). NOTE: If any part of the laboratory film is torn during the wrapping process, remove the torn film and get a new piece to wrap/seal the wet collector. (b) Grasped the wet collector with one hand and held it upright in front of him (with the cap and the grommet to the top). With the thumb pointing upward and the laboratory film held firmly under the length of the thumb, began a steady, firm pull on the film by grasping it between the palm of the hand and the fingers. (c) Pulled the laboratory film completely around the wet collector (but did not seal it) and released the pulling end. Then pulled the film positioned above the cap across the cap and down the side until the film could be positioned under itself when the wrapping was continued. (d) Continued wrapping the laboratory film as in paragraph 1a(3)(c) above, ensuring that the laboratory film that was pulled across the top was smoothed out and secured firmly under the film that was being pulled around the wet collector.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(e) Developed a smooth laboratory film seal around the wet collector using the palm of the hand and using the sides of the fingers to press the film into the small openings at the cap and the lower lid and around the wet collector key. (4) Placed an adhesive file label with the 19-digit sample identification (ID) number (see Field Manual [FM] 3-101-4) lengthwise on the wet collector beginning under the lower lid and ending at the base. NOTE: The entire 19-digit number must be visible. Do not wrap any part of the number under the bottom of the wet collector. (5) Used tamper-resistant tape and beginning at the bottom of the wet collector, ran the tape up the side of the wet collector, taping one side of the adhesive file label (but not obscuring the 19-digit sample ID number), across the cap, and down the other side, stopping near the bottom of the wet collector. (6) Turned the wet collector around and ran a second row of tamper-resistant tape as the first, forming a "cross" or an "X" across the top of the wet collector. (7) Folded a small piece of absorbent material (about 5 inches x 10 inches of cheesecloth [appropriate for absorbing up to 50 microliters of sample]) into a small wad and placed it in the corner of a clear plastic bag. (8) Placed the wrapped wet collector onto the absorbent material in the clear plastic bag and removed the air from the bag, twisted the opening of the bag into a gooseneck, secured the bag with a twist tie, and then removed the excess bag by cutting it at least 1 inch up from the twist tie. (9) Positioned another adhesive file label with the same 19-digit sample ID number as the wet collector lengthwise on the clear plastic bag near the label on the wet collector so that both 19-digit numbers could be clearly read by an observer. (10) Placed the bagged wet collector inside a second clear plastic bag and removed the air from the bag, twisted the opening of the bag into a gooseneck, secured the bag with a twist tie, then removed the excess bag by cutting it at least 1 inch up from the twist tie. (11) Positioned another adhesive file label with the same 19-digit sample ID number as the previous labels lengthwise on the clear plastic bag near the other labels so that all 19-digit numbers could be clearly read by an observer. (12) Handed the double-wrapped wet collector to operator #2 who placed it into the driver's side cooler pending disposition instructions. b. Conical tube. Operator #1-- (1) Used a P-1000 pipette and a 1,000-microliter pipette tip to pipette all remaining samples not used for detection and ID on the flow cytometer (FCM), the microluminometer, the threshold system (THS), or the hand held assay (HHA) test device into a single conical tube. Continued operating in the current operating protocol (standard protocol). (2) Capped the conical tube, visually observing the tube to ensure that it was securely sealed and there were no signs of sample leakage. (3) Used laboratory film (about 2 inches x 4 inches) to wrap the conical tube. (4) Positioned the laboratory film near the top of the conical tube with about 1/2 inch of the film above the cap and 1and 1/2 inches below the cap (this should secure the cap from leakages when the wrapping is completed).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: If any part of the laboratory film is torn during the wrapping process, remove the torn film and use a new piece to wrap/seal the conical tube. (5) Grasped the conical tube with one hand and held it upright in front of him (with the cap to the top). With the thumb pointed upward and the laboratory film held firmly under the length of the thumb, began a steady, firm pull on the film by grasping the film between the thumb, index, and middle fingers. (6) Pulled the laboratory film completely around the conical tube (but did not seal it) and released the pulling end. Then pulled the film positioned above the cap across the cap and down the side until the film could be positioned under itself when the wrapping was continued. (7) Continued wrapping the laboratory film as in paragraph 1b(6) above, ensuring that the laboratory film that was pulled across the top was smoothed out and secured firmly under the film that was being pulled around the conical tube. (8) Developed a smooth laboratory film seal around the conical tube using the thumb and fingers. (9) Positioned an adhesive file label with the 19-digit sample ID number lengthwise on the conical tube beginning at the cap and ending at the base. NOTE: The 19-digit sample ID number should be written small enough to fit lengthwise on the conical tube without extending beyond the tip. No part of the 19-digit number should be wrapped under the bottom of the conical tube. The entire number must be visible on one side. (10) Secured a roll of tamper-resistant tape. (11) Used a single piece of tamper-resistant tape and beginning at the bottom of the conical tube, ran the tape up the side of the conical tube, taping one side of the adhesive file label (but not obscuring the 19-digit sample ID number), across the cap, and down the other side, stopping near the bottom of the conical tube. (12) Folded a small piece of absorbent material (about 1 inch x 2 inches of cheesecloth [appropriate for absorbing up to 4 microliter of sample]) into a small wad and placed it in the corner of a small clear plastic bag. (13) Placed the wrapped conical tube onto the absorbent material and removed the air from the clear plastic bag, twisted the opening of the bag into a gooseneck, secured the bag with a twist tie, and removed the excess bag by cutting it at least 1 inch up from the twist tie. (14) Positioned another adhesive file label with the same 19-digit sample ID number as the conical tube lengthwise on the clear plastic bag near the label on the conical tube so that both 19-digit numbers could be clearly read by an observer. (15) Placed the bagged conical tube inside a second clear plastic bag and removed the air from the bag, twisted the opening of the bag into a gooseneck, secured the bag with a twist tie, then removed the excess bag by cutting it at least 1 inch up from the twist tie. (16) Positioned another adhesive file label with the same 19-digit sample ID number as the other labels lengthwise on the clear plastic bag near the other labels so that all 19-digit numbers could be clearly read by an observer. (17) Handed the double-wrapped conical tube to operator #2 who placed it in the driver's side cooler pending disposition instructions. c. The HHA test device. Operator #2--		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Used a P-1000 pipette and a 1,000-microliter pipette tip to pipette all remaining samples not used for detection and ID on the FCM, the microluminometer, or the THS into a single conical tube. Continued operating in the current operating protocol (standard protocol). (2) Used the reacted HHA test device with the adhesive label and 19-digit sample ID number affixed to the reverse side. Continued operating in the current operating protocol (standard protocol), alternate sampling, continuous monitoring, and threshold nonmission capable (NMC). (3) Placed the HHA test device into a clear plastic bag, removed the air from the bag, twisted the opening of the bag into a gooseneck, secured the bag with a twist tie, then removed the excess bag by cutting it at least 1 inch up from the twist tie. (4) Positioned an adhesive file label with the same 19-digit sample ID number as on the HHA test device on the clear plastic bag so that both 19-digit numbers could be clearly read by an observer. (5) Placed the bagged HHA test device inside a second clear plastic bag and removed the air from the bag, twisted the opening of the bag into a gooseneck, secured the bag with a twist tie, then removed the excess bag by cutting it at least 1 inch up from the twist tie. (6) Positioned another adhesive file label with the same 19-digit sample ID number as the previous labels on the clear plastic bag so that all 19-digit numbers could be clearly read by an observer. (7) Placed the prepared HHA test device in the driver's side cooler pending disposition instructions. 2. Operators #1 and #2 ensure that the plastic or Teflon container is covered with a lid. 3. Operators #1 and #2 complete the following sample evacuation actions: a. M31 Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS). (1) Operator #1 saved the alert sequence data to the FCM diskette, removed and "write protected" the diskette from the high-volume aerodynamic particle sizer (HVAPS) and the FCM, and immediately labeled and installed a new formatted diskette. (2) Operator #2 saved the alert sequence information to the THS diskette, removed and "write protected" the diskette from the THS, and immediately labeled and installed a new formatted diskette. (3) Operator #1 or #2 obtained two copies of printouts from the FCM and THS testing (if conducted). NOTE: If the printer in NMC, label the FCM and THS diskettes "PRINTER NMC." (4) Operator #1 or #2 labeled the FCM, APS, and THS diskettes and the FCM and THS printouts with the assigned 19-digit sample ID number. b. M31A1 BIDS. (1) Operator #1 or #2 provided manual input to the central information processor (CIP) (if required), ensured the CIP monitor screen information was correct for the alert sequence, then pressed "SAVE TO DISK" on the CIP monitor screen and saved the CIP information to the diskette. (2) Operator #1 or #2 printed two copies of the CIP monitor screen(s) per the unit's SOP, removed and "write protected" the diskette from the CIP, and immediately labeled and installed a new formatted disk. (3) Operators #1 and #2 completed sample evacuation preparation as follows:		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(a) Operator #1 or #2 completed two copies of the BIDS incident report (BIR) and applied the 19-digit sample ID number. Operator #1 signed the BIDS incident report. (b) Operator #1 or #2 ensured that each item was labeled with the assigned sample ID number, diskettes were "write protected," and the BIR was signed by operator #1 and placed all items in a diskette mailer, sealed each opening of the diskette mailer with tamper-resistant tape, and placed the assigned sample ID number on the diskette mailer. NOTE: If an adhesive label is used for the sample ID number on the diskette mailer, place a strip of tamper-resistant tape along one edge of the adhesive label. (c) Operator #1 or #2 completed Department of the Army (DA) Form 4137. (d) Operator #2 ensured that the wet collector or the conical tube and/or the reacted HHA test device was placed into the driver's side cooler pending disposition instructions. (e) Operator #2 ensured that all documentation packages were kept with the proper sample pending disposition instructions. (f) Operator #1 ensured that all documents, samples, and diskettes were signed for during shift changes to maintain chain of custody. (g) Operator #1 or #2 submitted a report to higher HQ. (h) Operator #1 ensured that the sample packages and documentation forms were transferred to a receiving agency when evacuation was directed.		
4. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that each container is appropriately labeled with an ID number.		
5. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that DA Form 1971-6-R, Department of Defense (DD) Form 1911, and DA Form 1594 are filled out with the appropriate data.		
6. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that the BIDS station report is filled out with the appropriate date.		
7. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that the lid is sealed with pressure-sensitive tape.		
8. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that each container is triple wrapped, first with tin foil and then with clear plastic.		
9. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that the plastic or Teflon container with the sample is placed into a clear plastic bag.		
10. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that the clear plastic bag is marked with the ID numbers of the samples.		
11. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that the reacted HHA tickets are placed in clear plastic bags and wrapped in the same manner as the sample containers.		
12. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that the clear plastic bag containing the reacted HHA tickets are labeled with the appropriate ID numbers.		
13. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that all samples are in the onboard cooler, ice chest, or insulated container.		
14. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that computer diskettes containing the aerodynamic particle sizer (APS), FCM, and THS results are enclosed in a cardboard floppy diskette mailer and labeled with the appropriate ID number and sealed with pressure-sensitive tape.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
15. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that the floppy diskette mailer is placed in a clear plastic bag or an appropriate substitute and double bagged or wrapped.		
16. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that the clear plastic bag containing the floppy diskette mailer is labeled with the appropriate ID number.		
17. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that the plastic or Teflon container is covered with a lid.		
18. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that the bottle is appropriately labeled with an ID number.		
19. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that the total sample is properly containerized. The total sample consists of a biological sample and reacted detector tickets.		
20. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that the container is lined inside with absorbent packing material.		
21. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that the bag is placed into an appropriate cooling container (such as an ice chest or a refrigerator).		
22. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that all documents are put in a folder that is taped to the outside of the cooler.		
23. Operator #1 or #2 ensures that the sample is transferred to the receiving agency.		
24. Operator #1 or #2 submits report to higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
03-3-0023	Conduct Biological Detection Operations (Respond to Aerodynamic Particle Sizer [APS] Alert)	ARTEP 3-477-10-MTP
03-3-0026	Conduct Alternate Biological Sample Collection Operations (When Liquid Sampler is Nonmission Capable [NMC])	ARTEP 3-477-10-MTP
03-3-0027	Conduct Continuous Monitoring Operations (When Aerodynamic Particle Sizer [APS] is Nonmission Capable [NMC])	ARTEP 3-477-10-MTP

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Evacuate Biological Samples to the Designated Sample Transfer Point (03-3-0029)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The BIDS platoon is conducting sampling operations to locate ,detect, and collect biological aerosol agents. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit is required to locate, detect, and collect biological aerosol agents. The sample is transported to the designated sample transfer point and transferred to the designated custodial officer in such a manner that the legal chain of custody is maintained for the sample and the supporting documentation. The BIDS team leader submits a biological report concerning the evacuation process to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the operations order (OPORD) instructions and the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The operator notifies the BIDS team leader that a sample is ready for transport, transfer, and evacuation.		
* 2. The BIDS team leader coordinates with platoon HQ for sample pickup or delivery to the designated sample transfer point.		
3. The BIDS team ensures that a Department of Defense (DD) Form 1911 is properly filled out and used during all sample transfers.		
4. The BIDS team verifies the identification of the person (chain of custody officer) designated to receive the sample.		
5. The BIDS team transfers the sample to the receiving agency.		
* 6. The BIDS team leader or the BIDS team leader submits a biological report to higher HQ when the sample is evacuated to the designated sample transfer point and properly transferred to the designated custodial officer.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Set Up the Biological Surveillance Site (03-3-0031)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is supporting combat operations. Communication is established, and reports are being received from subordinate units and transmitted to higher headquarters (HQ) according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). The enemy forces have the capability to employ biological weapons and may have already employed them. The BIDS platoon is tasked to set up operations within the corps's area of operation conduct biological surveillance operations to detect biological aerosols, and submit findings and results to higher HQ according to the operation order (OPORD) instructions and the TSOP. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BIDS team leader is required to physically locate an appropriate biological surveillance site. The team leader is required to report to higher HQ when the biological surveillance site is operational according to the OPORD and the TSOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The BIDS team members move the Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) vehicle into its designated location and prepare the BIDS for operations. NOTE: Ensure proper preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) are completed on all equipment. a. The operator turned off the main circuit breaker in the BIDS and ensured that all detection equipment, radios, and computers were turned off. b. The generator operator extended the generator's power cable to its full length and connected the generator cable into the receptacle plug under the front shelter of the driver's side. (1) Ensured that the generator was properly grounded. (2) Checked the generator malfunction indicator panels. (3) Connected the two generator cables together. (4) Started the generator engine according to weather conditions. (5) Rotated the master switch to the PRIME and RUN positions. (6) Held the master switch in the RUN position for 30 seconds. (7) Ensured that the safety system override knob (battleshort) was in the OFF position. (8) Ensured that the dead crank switch was in the UNIT position. (9) Turned the master switch to the START position. (10) Adjusted the frequency knob to 60 hertz. (11) Adjusted the voltage knob to 110 volts. (12) Ensured that the AMVM knob on the generator was in the 12 o'clock position. (13) Checked all gauges, particularly the battery charger indicator, to ensure that they were in the green area. (14) Sent power to the BIDS only after running the generator for a minimum of 5 minutes.		
2. The BIDS team members returned to the BIDS vehicle to continue system setup. a. Recorded the global positioning system (GPS) reading. b. Turned the power switch on and pressed the POSITION key.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Recorded the GPS reading and turned the power off. d. Operator #1 erected and installed the Tactical Meteorological (TACMET) System sensor. e. Operator #2 moved on top of the vehicle and-- (1) Rolled up the air conditioner cover. (2) Released the antenna tie-downs. (3) Released the camouflage nets. (4) Removed covers and emplaced stacks. (5) Installed the sky wave antenna. f. Both operators deployed and emplaced the BIDS camouflage nets. g. Turned on the main circuit breaker. 3. The operators return to the BIDS for shelter start-up. a. Operator #2 turned on the environmental control unit, if the shelter's temperature was not between 50-80 degrees Fahrenheit. b. Conducted M31-BIDS shelter start-up according to Training Manual (TM) 3-6665-349-12&P. (1) Operator #1 ensured that the shelter's temperature was within 50-80 degrees Fahrenheit and turned on the electronic control unit (ECU) as necessary. (2) Operator #1 turned on the GPS and logged the location in the system's logbook. (3) Operator #1 removed and connected the microluminometer. (4) Operator #1 prepared the flow cytometer (FCM) for operation. (5) Operator #1 prepared the liquid and biological samplers for operation. (6) Operator #1 prepared the high-volume aerodynamic particle sizer (HVAPS) for operation. (7) Operator #2 turned the TACMET System to the ON position. (8) Operator #2 prepared the threshold system (THS) for operation. (9) Operator #2 ensured that the Harris and Single-Channel Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) radios were set and operating. (10) Operator #2 reported the BIDS operational status to the platoon leader immediately. c. Operator #1 removed the three collector concentrator stacks from the transport rack. d. Conducted the M31A1-BIDS shelter start-up according to TM 3-6665-350-12&P. (1) Operator #1 prepared the central information processor (CIP) for operation. (2) Operator #1 loaded the GPS data into the CIP. (3) Operator #1 prepared the chemical biological mass spectrometer (CBMS) for operation. (4) Operator #1 prepared the ultraviolet aerodynamic particle sizer (UVAPS) for operation, minus the team ready screen. (5) Operator #1 prepared the liquid and biological samplers for operation. (6) Operator #1 completed the data entry for the "team ready" screen UVAPS. (7) Operator #2 turned the TACMET to the ON position. (8) Operator #2 turned circuit breakers 2 and 4 to the ON position. (9) Operator #2 prepared the biological detector for use. (10) Operator #2 ensured that the Harris and the SINCGARS radios were set and operating. (11) Operator #2 reported the BIDS' operational status to the platoon leader immediately. e. Operator #2 installed the stacks on top of the BIDS shelter.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Operator #2 removed the sky wave antenna from its storage location and installed it in its receptacle. 4. BIDS team members prepares the FCM for operations. a. Operator #1 checked the water reservoir. b. Operator #1 opened the fluid drawer and checked the (ISO) flow and the clenz clean agent containers to ensure that they were full and the filters were not clogged. c. Operator #1 checked the gauges and status lights. d. Operator #1 turned on the FCM and conducted the 20-minute warm up period. 5. The BIDS team set up the camouflage nets. a. Set up the camouflage nets by draping them over the vehicles. b. The team leader ensured that camouflage nets were secured to the ground with stakes. c. The team leader ensured that the staked-down side of the camouflage net was facing the prevailing wind. d. The team member replaced the radio antennas and installed the meteorological emitting diode (MET) sensor after the camouflage nets were set up. 6. BIDS team members place the biological sampler into operation. a. Operator #1 turned on the biological sampler and checked the following light-emitting diode (LED): the LED display shows self test, then actual and preset temperatures, sample period is set at 45 minutes. b. Operator #1 checked for the presence of wet collector. c. Operator #1 turned on the aerodynamic particle sizer (APS) and its dedicated computer. d. Operator #1 turned on the liquid sampler. e. Operator #1 installed 6 test tubes in the carousel.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Displace the Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) (03-3-0032)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit occupies an assembly area (AA) or is stationary during a lull in operations. It performs subtasks whenever the situation permits, often in response to a unit warning order (WO). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The BIDS team will shut down the BIDS.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The BIDS team leader, based on guidance from the platoon leader or orders, will determine the level of shutdown. NOTE: Shutdown can be required due to temporary stand-down, displacement, or mission completion. The procedures that follow are for a complete shutdown. 2. Operator #2 shuts down the threshold system (THS). a. Saved data to diskette, turned off the computer, and closed the monitor screen (ensuring that it was locked). NOTE: These shutdown procedures do not have to be accomplished in any set order. (1) Shut down the flow cytometer (FCM). (2) Shut down the high-volume aerodynamic particle sizer (HVAPS). (3) Shut down the liquid sampler. (4) Shut down the biological sampler. (5) Turned off the air conditioner. (6) Turned off the main circuit breaker. b. Shut the drawer and ensured that it was locked. NOTE: These shutdown procedures do not have to be accomplished in any set order. (1) Shut down the THS. (2) Shut down and stored the microluminometer. (3) Shut down the Tactical Meteorological (TACMET) System. (4) Shut down the biological sampler. (5) Turned off the system control module (SCM), the M43A1 detector, the M42 alarm, all switches on both radios, the power amps for the Harris, and circuit breakers 2 and 4. c. Removed the reader substrate (fluid in the reader) using an empty 50-milliliter combitip and replaced it with 30 milliliters of wash buffer for reader shutdown from the threshold reagent kit. d. Placed the reference electrode in a storage tube. Placed the cover on the reader. NOTE: In cold weather, to prevent damage due to freezing, the reference electrode and the reader must be removed and stored in a warm place. e. Placed the cover on the THS workstation. f. Disposed of all waste in waste disposal containers according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP). g. Placed all reagents in the driver's side, portable cooler. h. Shut the generator down. i. Operators #1 and #2 packed up the system after shutdown of all equipment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(1) Made the radios remote to the front cab. (2) Removed the global positioning system (GPS) to the front cab. (3) Removed and stored the TACMET System. (4) Secured the system's camouflage nets to the top of the shelter. (5) Snapped the air conditioner cover into place and then came down off the shelter. (6) Removed and stored the generator grounding kit or rods. (7) Removed waste from the shelter. (8) Made final checks of the system. (9) Shut the shelter door and secured the ladder. (10) Backed the vehicle up to the generator. (11) Unhooked the generator and stored the vehicle's power cable. (12) Hooked up the generator and lights to the vehicle. (13) Wrapped the generator's cable clockwise around the generator for travel. (14) Removed the sky wave antenna and replaced it with a whip antenna, if used. (15) Secured the Harris and Single-Channel Ground and Airborne Radio System (SINCGARS) radio antennae by connecting them to the tie downs. (16) Removed all collector stacks and replaced protective covers on the shelter. 3. Operator #2 shuts down the microluminometer. 4. Operator #1 and #2 shut down the M31A1 BIDS. NOTE: If not displacing, leave the microluminometer plugged in and on the workstation. a. Unplugged the adapter from the outlet. b. Shut down the detection suite components. NOTE: These procedures do not have to be accomplished in any set order. (1) Shut down the central information processor (CIP). (2) Shut down the biological sampler. (3) Shut down the liquid sampler. (4) Shut down the ultraviolet aerodynamic particle sizer (UVAPS). (5) Turned off the chemical biological mass spectrometer (CBMS). (6) Shut down the miniflow cytometer (mini-FCM). (7) Turned off the air conditioner. (8) Turned off the main circuit breaker. (9) Turned off the direct-current (DC) control panel switches. c. Unplugged the adapter from the microluminometer. NOTE: These procedures do not have to be accomplished in any set order. (1) Shut down the biological detector. (2) Turned off, removed, and stored the TACMET System. (3) Turned off the SCM, all switches on radios, high frequency (HF) power amps, and circuit breakers 2 and 4. d. Wrapped the power cord around the adapter. NOTE: After all equipment is shut down, the generator can then be shut down after no load for five minutes. e. Turned off the generator. f. Placed the adapter and microluminometer into its carrying case, leaving the case open and on the counter. g. Placed the releasing agent and ticket in the box and returned the box to the storage shelf.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. Operator #1 shuts down the FCM system while operator #2 is doing steps 2 and 3. a. Filled a conical tube with 10 drops of sodium hypochlorite solution (bleach). b. Checked that the ACQUISITION RUN was displayed on the computer monitor. c. Checked that the sample stage was empty. d. Put the conical tube onto the sample stage. e. Removed the tube when the sample stage lowered. f. Put 10 drops of distilled water into each of three conical tubes. g. Put the first tube onto the sample stage. h. Removed the tube when the sample stage lowered. i. Repeated the last two steps for the other two tubes. j. Pressed the CLEANSE button. NOTE: In cold weather, to prevent damages to equipment, perform steps k and l. In nonfreezing weather, go to step m. k. Put an empty conical tube in the sample stage, pressed the PRIME button to start a PRIME cycle, and waited until the PRIME cycle finished, then repeated the PRIME cycle two more times. l. Emptied the sheath container, the cleaning agent container, and the waste container. m. Put 10 drops of cleaning agent from the green top into the conical tube. n. Put the tube in the sample stage and disposed of waste in the waste container. o. Exited the software and turned off the FCM system at the computer. p. Locked the monitor into position.		
6. Operator #1 shuts down the liquid sampler. a. Pulled out the reservoir drawer. b. Disconnected the tube from the collection fluid bottle by pressing on the silver release and the invert tube. c. Pressed the SAVE SAMPLE button and waited 6 minutes for the pump to drain the fluid from the tube. NOTE: During the 6-minute wait you can perform steps 7 and 8. Then return to shut down the rest of the liquid sampler. d. Checked for a lack of bubbles and liquid through the transparent portion of the liquid scrubber. e. Turned off the pump, the light, and the main switch when the bubbles and liquid were gone. f. Lifted the locking knob and turned the tension lever clockwise to the 2 o'clock position. g. Inspected the carousel for a clean surface; wiped off any spills. NOTE: In cold weather, to prevent damage to equipment, the collection fluid bottle must be emptied. h. Opened the fluid reservoir assembly and emptied the waste bottle. i. Reconnected the tube to the collection fluid bottle. j. Closed and locked the fluid reservoir assembly. NOTE: The system is now ready for the next mission.		
7. Operator #1 shut down the APS. a. Removed the diskette from the disk drive and placed it in the drawer. b. Turned off the APS computer by setting the power switch in the OFF position; closed the computer case and secured the strap. NOTE: DO NOT turn off the laser, pump, or power switches.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Performed preparation for movement, if preparing to move to a new location. 8. Operator #1 shuts down the biological sampler by turning off the power switch. 9. Operator #2 turns off the SCM of the M93 gas-particulate filter unit, the M43A1 detector, the M42 alarm, and all switches on the radios to include the HF power units and amplifier switches. a. Turned off circuit breakers 2 and 4 for the radios. b. Returned to Step 6 to assist operator #1 with shutdown of liquid sampler, if necessary. NOTE: At this time everything except the main circuit breaker should be off. 10. Operator #1 removes his surgical mask and gloves and performs the following: a. Turned off the electronic control unit (ECU). b. Turned off the main circuit breaker. c. Signaled operator #2 that all equipment was shut down. d. Removed the HF remote from the shelter and installed it in the vehicle's cab. e. Returned to the shelter and unplugged the TACMET System cable from the receptacle on the shelter. 11. Operator #2 shuts down the generator. NOTE: Do not use the EMERGENCY STOP button unless the generator is malfunctioning. a. Checked all gauges. b. Ensured that the alternating-current (AC) interrupter switch was toggled to the OPEN position. c. Turned off the panel lights, if used. d. Rotated the MASTER switch to OFF. e. Put the DEAD CRANK switch to the OFF position. 12. Operator #2 climbs on top of the shelter and removes the TACMET sensor and mast and hands them to operator #1. 13. Operator #1 places the TACMET System in the traveling configuration. a. Removed the sensor and gently placed it in the operator's chair. b. Separated the two poles of the mast and put them in brackets at the base of the shelving on the driver's side. c. Wrapped the cord around the base and placed it in its carrying case with the microluminometer. d. Closed the case and placed it under the THS workstation, securing the cord in place. 14. Operator #2 removed equipment from the top of the shelter. a. Removed the collector concentrator stacks and placed them on top of the shelter above the door, replacing the protective covers as the stacks were removed. b. Unscrewed the antenna of the sky wave antenna (if installed) and handed it down to operator #1, replacing the whip antenna in the radio base. 15. Operator #1 secured the stacks. a. Secured the collector concentrator stacks inside the shelter. b. If sky wave antenna was removed in step 14, removed four anchors from the ground and returned the anchors and antenna to the carrying case. c. Assisted operator #2 with the camouflage nets by handing them up to the top of the shelter.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
16. Operator #2 removed the camouflage net. CAUTION: To prevent burns to the camouflage nets, ensure that they do NOT come in contact with the HF radio antenna base. a. Secured the camouflage nets to the top of the shelter. b. Tied down the antenna. 17. Operator #1 stores the generator equipment. a. Unhooked the generator cables and returned the BIDS's power cable to the storage bin on the driver's side of the vehicle. b. Removed and stored the grounding kit or rods. c. Secured the canvas cover to the ECU, after the camouflage nets had been secured. d. Removed all waste from inside the shelter and disposed of it according to the unit's SOP. e. Made a final check, ensuring that-- (1) The netting on the storage shelf was secured and holding the contents inside. (2) The elastic cord on the shelf under the THS workstation was secure. (3) No loose objects were inside the shelter. (4) Shelter lights and the DC converter was off. f. Shut the shelter door and secured the ladder. 18. Operator #2 secured the generator's power cable and wrapped the cable around the generator in its traveling mode.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Use Passive Air Defense Measures (44-1-C220.03-1017)
(FM 44-8) (FM 101-5-1) (FM 20-3)
(FM 44-80) (FM 55-30)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon is in a tactical position. Hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) have been operating in the general area. The platoon's weapons control status (WCS) is WEAPONS HOLD. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The opposing forces (OPFOR) aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or UAVs) do not detect the unit. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 or blackout conditions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The unit leader uses passive air defense measures in a tactical position. a. Used all available resources (camouflage, cover, concealment, dispersion, and so forth) to hide personnel and equipment to limit its vulnerability. NOTE: Air situational awareness is achieved by the unit monitoring simplified handheld terminal units (SHTUs). b. Covered or shaded shiny items, particularly windshields and optics. c. Established and rehearsed air attack alarms. d. Dispersed vehicles, tents, and supplies to reduce vulnerability to air attack. e. Constructed field fortifications with organic equipment as necessary to protect personnel and vulnerable mission-essential equipment. f. Manned the observation posts (OPs) and listening posts (LPs), in daytime or nighttime, to provide warning of approaching aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or UAVs). g. Established a listening watch on the air defense early warning net, if equipment was available and operational.		
* 2. The unit leader uses passive air defense measures in a convoy. a. The convoy commander briefed all unit personnel. b. Camouflaged vehicles and equipment before moving out. c. Selected the column interval based on instructions, the mission, and the terrain. d. Assigned soldiers to air guard duties with specific search sectors covering 360 degrees. e. Placed crew-served weapons throughout the convoy to cover the front, the rear, and flanks (avenues of approach). f. Identified visually threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or UAVs). g. Reported all aircraft actions to higher headquarters (HQ). h. Established and rehearsed air attack alarms.		
3. Unit personnel use passive air defense measures when occupying or displacing. a. Maintained the vehicle interval specified in the movement order. b. Staggered vehicles to avoid linear patterns. c. Assigned air guards to sectors of search that covered 360 degrees and maintained coverage until the convoy completed the movement.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Identified visually threat aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or UAVs). e. Reported all aircraft actions to higher HQ. f. Established a vehicle order of precedence.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
052-191-1501	Perform Individual Camouflage	MOS E 1-S 9
301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value	MOS E 1-S 9

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
COMPANY
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Take Active Combined-Arms Air Defense Measures Against Hostile Aerial Platforms (44-1-C221.03-1018)
(FM 44-8) (FM 44-80)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit receives early warning of aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or unmanned aerial vehicles [UAVs]) in the area. Unit personnel detect unknown or hostile aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or UAVs). The unit is in a tactical position. Weapons control status (WCS) is WEAPONS TIGHT. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit destroys or forces the attacking aerial platforms (rotary-wing, fixed-wing, or UAVs) away from friendly positions. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 or blackout conditions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. Leaders direct combined-arms air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms not attacking a stationary unit. a. Gave the air attack alarm. b. Occupied defensive positions. c. Searched assigned sectors for aerial platforms. d. Identified and reported the presence of aerial platforms in the area and sent priority intelligence requirements (PIR) to higher headquarters (HQ). e. Made the engagement decision. NOTE: When making the decision of whether or not to fire at nonattacking hostile aerial platforms with small arms, take into consideration the assigned mission and the tactical situation. The unit must positively and visually identify aerial platforms before engaging with small arms unless the aircraft is committing a hostile act. DANGER: Munitions cannot distinguish between friend and foe. Review all airspace control measures. You must perform all precautionary measures to ensure that the munitions you fire do not cause injury or death to friendly forces or damage to allied equipment. Even computerized systems require close observation. f. Engaged the unit on aerial platforms with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns). NOTE: Expect the firing signature from small arms to disclose the unit's position. g. Caused no fratricide by the engagement.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTES: (1) Aim points for propeller-driven aircraft are the same as for helicopters. (2) Select aim points in football field lengths: one football field equals about 91 meters. (3) Once the lead distance is estimated, the riflemen and machine gunners aim and fire their weapons until the aircraft has flown past that point. Maintain the aim point, not the lead distance. The weapon should not move once the firing cycle starts. (4) Establish preselected aim points when the unit is in a static position. (5) Accuracy in relation to target hits is not necessary. Accuracy in relation to the aim point is necessary. Volume fire, a coordinated high-volume of fire that the aircraft has to fly through, will achieve the desired results. AERIAL PLATFORMS TYPE COURSE AIM POINT Jet/cruise missile Crossing Two football fields in front of aerial platforms nose Jet/cruise missile Overhead Two football fields in front of aerial platforms nose Jet/cruise missile Directly at you Slightly above aerial platforms nose Helicopter/UAV Crossing One-half football field in front of nose Helicopter/UAV Directly at you Slightly above helicopter/UAV body Helicopter/UAV Hovering Slightly above helicopter/UAV body h. Sent PIRs to higher HQ. i. Reloaded weapons following the engagement. j. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit position as directed by the unit commander. * 2. Leaders direct small-arms air defense measures against hostile aerial platforms not attacking a moving target. a. Gave the air attack alarm. b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in-depth or vehicle operators continued to move the unit. c. Moved vehicles to covered, concealed positions. All personnel not assigned crew-served weapons dismounted and prepared to engage the aircraft or increased dispersion. d. Engaged nonattacking aircraft only as directed. e. Identified visually threat aerial platforms. f. Reported all aerial platform actions to higher HQ. g. The senior leader ordered the unit to engage. h. Engaged the aerial platforms with all available small arms. i. Reloaded weapons following the engagement of aircraft. * 3. Leaders direct combined-arms air defense measures against aerial platforms attacking a stationary unit. a. Gave the air attack alarm. b. Directed all available personnel to immediately engage the attacking aerial platforms per the unit's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). c. Reloaded weapons following the engagement. d. The observation posts (OP) continued to scan their assigned sectors. e. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit's position as directed by the tactical situation or the TSOP. f. Reported casualties to higher HQ. g. Reported any aircraft action to higher HQ. * 4. The unit leader or noncommissioned officers (NCOs) direct small air defense measures during a convoy movement.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Alerted vehicle commanders of an impending attack. b. Dispersed vehicles alternately to the shoulders of the road (off road, if possible) and turned to covered, concealed positions if the terrain permitted. c. Maintained vehicle intervals or increased interval or dispersion and used evasive driving techniques. d. Dismounted and took up firing positions. e. Prepared personnel to fire on the orders of the senior individual present or had them automatically return fire (per engagement procedures) if an aircraft was attacking. f. Identified the aerial platforms. g. Engaged the aerial platforms with all available small arms (rifles and machine guns). h. Reloaded weapons following the attack. i. Reported the attack and submitted PIRs to higher HQ. j. Reported casualties to higher HQ.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-311-2007	Engage Targets with an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Conduct Contractor Logistics Support (CLS) for the M31/M31A1 Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) and the M94 Long-Range Biological Standoff Detection System (03-2-7002)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 3-101-4) (FM 3-101-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Platoon headquarters (HQ) is receiving requests for BIDS/Long- Range Biological Standoff Detection System (LRBSDS) maintenance and supply support from subordinate BIDS teams. Traditional equipment and supplies are arriving through supply channels, but BIDS/LRBSDS supplies are now required. CLS elements are in control of a fifteen-day supply of BIDS/LR-BSDS specific items, the platoon and company operation order (OPORD) are available. The supply area has been established and supply support is a continuous task that is performed simultaneously with other support and operational tasks. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: CLS maintains BIDS specific supplies and line replacement units (LRU) at a 90% operational readiness level. BIDS specific supplies are distributed without interfering with mission requirements as established by the technical standing operating procedures (TSOP) and OPORD. During mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) 4 operations CLS support may be reduced to minimum essential actions.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The BIDS team leader coordinates for mission support. a. Provided supporting biodetection platoon (BDP) CLS elements with appropriate missions, priorities, and support (as required). b. Ensured that CLS elements were supported with rations, security, adequate shelter; and force protection as, required. c. Conducted appropriate coordination to ensure the availability of CLS maintenance/ supply facilities (BDP CLS support element needed a maintenance area (approximately 800 square feet required); covered storage (approximately 100 square feet required); and refrigerated storage (approximately 200 square feet; an enclosed area 10' by 20' by 10'). 2. The BDP supports CLS operations. a. Maintained information on component and system status. b. If required, ensured standard Army maintenance supported relationships were established through coordination with company HQ or supporting command and control (C2) elements. c. With the CLS team, provided appropriate missions, priorities, and support. d. Coordinated resupply efforts with the CLS according to the unit's TSOP. 3. Biodetection team (BDT) conducts BIDS/LRBSDS maintenance/resupply. a. Maintained the BIDS/LRBSDS vehicles, trailers, generators, and components according to the appropriate technical manuals (TMs). b. Troubleshot and performed operator-level repairs as BIDS/LRBSDS components become nonmission capable (NMC). c. Reported NMC status as soon as possible, if a biodetection suite component or a component of the LRBSDS was beyond operator-level repair.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. The biodetection C2 element determined whether a CLS team should attempt repair on-site or remove the component or whether the BDT should remove the NMC component and install a serviceable component. 4. The Army Material Command (AMC) provides CLS operational support. a. Provided general support to CLS providers once in-theater. b. Provided contracting officer representative support to modify or adjust contractual requirements and services. c. Ensured that CLS priorities and guidance always originated from the biodetection unit. 5. The CLS team provides CLS for the M31/M31A1 BIDS/LRBSDS. a. Provided system support, including maintenance of the BIDS detection suite components and the requisition and distribution of unique biodetection unit supplies. b. Provided specific performance requirements identified within the contractor's statement of work. c. Provided maintenance and supply support necessary to sustain biodetection operations throughout the campaign. d. Sought approval to use host nation (HN) assets to provide supplies. e. Organized team elements to support a CLS rear and a CLS main. NOTE: The CLS rear provides critical interface with industrial-based vendors and AMC, ensuring that the wholesale sustaining base remains advised on supply consumption and component maintenance issues. The CLS main provides in-theater biodetection maintenance and support and, based on mission requirements, provides support to biodetection elements with CLS contact teams.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
COMPANY

TASK: Treat Casualties (08-2-0003.03-00CT)

(FM 21-11)	(AR 350-41)	(AR 600-8-1)
(FM 3-4)	(FM 3-5)	(FM 8-10)
(FM 8-10-1)	(FM 8-10-6)	(FM 8-10-7)
(FM 8-285)	(FM 8-42)	(FM 8-55)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit has sustained casualties and has no organic medical treatment personnel. Threat force contact has been broken. Soldiers have been wounded and may have chemical contamination or nonbattle injuries. Some unit members have been assigned the additional duty of combat lifesaver. Unit personnel are performing first aid (self-aid/buddy-aid) treatment, and combat lifesavers are providing enhanced first aid treatment until medical treatment personnel arrive. This task is performed simultaneously with other reorganization tasks. Higher headquarter's (HQ) tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and operation order (OPORD) are available. Simplified collective-protection equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available.

NOTE: This task should not be trained in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4 except when treating nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) casualties. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel provide first aid treatment for casualties according to Field Manual (FM) 21-11, FM 8-285, and combat lifesaver certification standards. At MOPP 4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to provide treatment and limit the type of treatment provided.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander and leaders supervise first aid treatment of casualties. a. Developed a treatment plan. b. Monitored the treatment for compliance with FM 21-11 and to ensure that all casualties were treated. c. Directed the employment of combat lifesavers to treat casualties. d. Reported casualties, as required. e. Coordinated the replenishment of Class VIII supplies with the higher HQ's logistics element according to the TSOP. f. Directed the distribution of Class VIII supplies and equipment according to the TSOP. g. Enforced quality control procedures for Class VIII supplies issued to unit elements.		
2. Unit personnel survey casualties, checking them for-- a. Responsiveness. b. Breathing. c. Bleeding. d. Head injury. e. Shock. f. Fractures, to include cervical spine and back fractures. g. Burns.		
3. Unit personnel administer lifesaving first aid treatment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Cleared all objects from the casualty's throat. b. Used the jaw thrust method to open the airway if a cervical spine injury was suspected. c. Performed mouth-to-mouth resuscitation to restore the casualty's breathing according to cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) procedures.		
4. Unit personnel control hemorrhage. a. Applied dressing and bandages. b. Applied manual direct pressure to wounds. c. Elevated extremities. d. Applied pressure dressings to wounds. e. Applied tourniquets as a last resort.		
5. Unit personnel dress wounds. a. Applied occlusive dressings to open chest wounds, if possible. b. Applied dressings to open abdominal wounds. c. Applied dressings to open head wounds.		
6. Unit personnel splint suspected fractures. a. Employed available material to splint injuries. b. Splinted fractures in the position found. c. Restricted the movement of extremities. d. Checked circulation for impairment.		
7. Unit personnel provide first aid treatment to casualties with burns. a. Extinguished thermal burn agents. b. Removed chemical burn agents. c. Eliminated any electrical burn source. d. Uncovered the burn unless it was stuck to the clothing or a chemical environment existed. e. Applied a field dressing, if appropriate.		
8. Unit personnel provide first aid treatment for environmental injuries. a. Administered treatment for heat injuries. b. Administered first aid for frostbite.		
9. Unit personnel provide first aid treatment for chemical casualties. a. Took immediate protective steps to protect self and warn others according to FM 8-285. b. Protected casualties from further contamination. c. Administered nerve agent antidotes according to FM 8-285. d. Administered the convulsant antidote for nerve agents (CANA), if required. e. Decontaminated casualties according to FM 8-285, if necessary.		
10. Unit personnel prevent shock. a. Positioned casualties in the correct antishock position according to FM 21-11. b. Loosened casualties' clothing and equipment. c. Prevented casualties from chilling or overheating. d. Calmed casualties by reassuring them.		
11. Unit combat lifesavers perform enhanced first aid treatment. a. Evaluated casualties for the condition and +type of treatment needed. b. Measured casualties' vital signs. c. Inserted an oropharyngeal airway in unconscious casualties. d. Applied splints to fractured limbs. e. Administered first aid to chemical-agent casualties.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Initiated an intravenous infusion for hypovolemic shock. g. Identified environmental injuries. h. Treated environmental injuries. i. Managed battle fatigue casualties.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
MAINTENANCE SECTION
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Handle Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) (19-3-3106.03-1014)
(FM 3-19.40) (FM 19-4) (FM 21-75)
(FM 27-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: Enemy soldiers surrendered or were captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The capturing element takes charge of and evacuates EPWs according to the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP) and the search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag (5 Ss and T) method.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The element searches EPWs. a. Removed all weapons and documents of intelligence value. b. Returned personal items of no military intelligence value, such as protective clothing and equipment. c. Gave prisoners receipts for the personal property taken. d. Tagged each EPW and each item removed from him with necessary information, to include the date and the time of capture, the place (grid coordinate) of capture, the capturing unit, and the circumstances of capture. 2. The element segregates EPWs. a. Segregated EPWs by rank, sex, deserter, civilian, nationality, and ideology when possible. b. Turned wounded EPWs over to medical personnel for evacuation through medical channels. 3. The element silences EPWs. a. Prevented EPW leaders from giving orders. b. Prevented EPWs from planning an escape. c. Did not talk in front of EPWs, except to issue orders and maintain discipline. 4. The element safeguards EPWs. a. Removed EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield. b. Did not allow anyone to abuse EPWs. c. Treated EPWs humanely. d. Logged EPWs in and out as quickly as possible. e. Advised the EPW collection point of prisoners en route. f. Exploited intelligence information. 5. The element tags EPWs with Department of Defense (DD) Form 2745. a. Annotated the tag with the-- (1) Date and the time of capture. (2) Capturing unit. (3) Grid coordinates of capture.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Circumstance of capture. b. Attached Part A to the EPW. c. Retained Part B for the unit's records. d. Attached Part C to the property. e. Protected EPWs against insults. f. Protected EPWs against public curiosity. g. Provided medical attention and evacuated sick and wounded EPWs. 6. The element speeds EPWs to the rear. a. Notified higher headquarters (HQ) that the unit had EPWs. b. Removed EPWs rearward to the nearest military police (MP) collecting point. c. Exploited intelligence information.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Perform Unit-Level Maintenance (43-2-C322.03-1016)
(FM 4-30.3) (AR 385-10) (AR 385-40)
(DA PAM 738-750) (FM 9-43-2)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The company is tactically deployed and is currently engaged in combat. Unit maintenance personnel receive requests to repair inoperative equipment. The unit maintenance area is established. The required tools, repair parts, equipment, and personnel are available. Operators are performing preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the equipment. Recovery operations with injured operators on board may be required. The company's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) is available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit vehicles and equipment are maintained in an operational-ready status according to Department of the Army (DA) standards.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The company commander or the motor officer directs the unit's maintenance program. a. Monitored implementation of the unit's maintenance program. b. Monitored unit operational levels by reviewing vehicle and equipment status reports. c. Identified current or anticipated maintenance problems. d. Coordinated resolution of maintenance problems with higher headquarters (HQ). e. Requested control substitution approval from higher HQ. f. Approved emergency field repairs. g. Prepared materiel-condition status reports (MCSRs). h. Conducted periodic inspections of personnel and equipment to ensure that the safety program was enforced.		
* 2. Platoon or section leaders supervise operator maintenance. a. Monitored the performance of PMCS. b. Inspected vehicles, weapons, and equipment. c. Coordinated maintenance assistance with the unit's maintenance section. d. Monitored equipment repair parts status. e. Requested approval for emergency field repairs. f. Maintained the maintenance status of vehicles, weapons, and equipment. g. Provided input for MCSRs.		
3. Company personnel perform operator maintenance. a. Performed PMCS. b. Notified supervisors of any maintenance problems beyond the operator's capability. c. Performed emergency field repairs. d. Assisted unit maintenance personnel with repairs and services.		
* 4. The motor sergeant supervises unit maintenance personnel.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Organized unit maintenance personnel to perform unit maintenance activities. b. Supervised The Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS) and prescribed load list (PLL) procedures for completeness and accuracy. c. Supervised repair and inspection procedures to ensure that they were done safely and according to appropriate references. d. Requested approval for battle-damage assessment and repair (BDAR) from the company commander when established repair procedures could not be used. e. Supervised BDAR procedures to ensure that they were done according to the appropriate BDAR manuals. f. Requested approval to use controlled exchange from the company commander when required repair parts were not available. g. Supervised the use of controlled exchange for compliance with the commander's guidance. h. Supervised recovery operations to ensure that correct recovery and safety procedures were used. i. Supervised Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP) procedures to ensure that the testing of oil samples was done at the required intervals. j. Coordinated the maintenance status with platoon or section leaders. k. Provided the unit's maintenance status to the company commander.		
5. Unit maintenance personnel repair organic equipment. a. Diagnosed faults on inoperative equipment. b. Requested repair parts from the PLL clerk. c. Repaired the equipment according to applicable technical manuals (TMs). d. Requested approval for BDAR through the motor sergeant when established repair procedures could not be used. e. Performed BDAR according to the appropriate BDAR manual. f. Requested approval for controlled exchange through the motor sergeant when required repair parts were not available. g. Performed controlled exchange. h. Performed a final inspection to ensure quality control of repairs. i. Recorded completed work on appropriate documents. j. Employed safety procedures to minimize accidents.		
6. Unit maintenance personnel conduct transactions with the support maintenance personnel. a. Identified the category of repair. b. Corrected unit-level deficiencies. c. Prepared the required documentation for submission to support maintenance unit. d. Evacuated the equipment to the support maintenance unit. e. Verified the completion of repairs. f. Picked up equipment upon completion of repairs.		
7. Unit maintenance personnel perform administrative support functions. a. Maintained the PLL. b. Requested repair parts for the unit's equipment. c. Performed the required AOAP tasks. d. Turned in unserviceable repairable items. e. Maintained document registers. f. Maintained maintenance control records. g. Maintained technical publications on all organic equipment. h. Maintained tools and test equipment.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
i. Maintained power-generated equipment. 8. Maintenance personnel recover disabled vehicles. a. Verified the location of disabled vehicles. b. Moved on a concealed route to the disabled vehicles. c. Inspected vehicles to determine the required parts. d. Repaired vehicles on site, if possible. e. Evacuated nonrepairable vehicles to the unit's maintenance area. 9. Maintenance personnel react to a battle-damaged vehicle (recoverable) within a hostile area. a. Requested covering fire. b. Moved on a concealed route to the disabled vehicle. c. Towed the vehicle to a concealed location. d. Removed casualties from the vehicle. e. Performed self-aid and/or buddy aid. f. Requested medical assistance, if required. g. Evacuated casualties. h. Performed a battle damage assessment. i. Repaired the vehicle, if possible. j. Recovered the vehicle, if nonrepairable. 10. Maintenance personnel react to a battle-damaged vehicle (unrecoverable) within a hostile area. a. Requested direct and supporting fire. b. Moved on a concealed route to the disabled vehicle. c. Removed casualties from the vehicle. d. Treated casualties. e. Requested medical assistance, if required. f. Evacuated casualties. g. Requested disposition of the unrecoverable vehicle from the company commander. h. Conducted salvage operations. i. Prepared the vehicle for destruction. j. Destroyed the vehicle on order from the commander or his designated representative.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Establish and Operate a Single-Channel Voice Radio Net (11-2-C302.03-1010)
(FM 24-1) (FM 24-18) (FM 24-19)
(FM 24-35) (FM 24-35-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The element is tactically deployed and must establish communications networks. Operators were briefed and issued extracts of signal operation instructions (SOI) and standing signal instructions (SSI), a numerical cipher authenticated system, operations codes, and brevity lists. Situational hazards such as nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions; opposing forces (OPFOR); electronic warfare (EW); and directional-finding ability exist. General condition applies. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Operators establish and enter a radio net no later than the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD) or the operation plan (OPLAN). The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
SAFETY: Follow all appropriate safety guidelines and regulations.		
1. Radio operators install a radio set for operations. a. Secured radios in mount. b. Connected audio accessories. c. Installed antennas. d. Performed before-operation preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS). e. Performed radio operational checks.		
2. Radio operators make initial entry into the net. a. Obtained the appropriate call signs, suffixes, and frequencies from SOI and SSI. b. Entered a radio net. c. Authenticated when challenged by the net control station (NCS).		
3. Radio operators recognize frequency interference. a. Recognized jamming or interference. b. Determined if the interference was internal or external. c. Determined if the interference was intentional or unintentional.		
4. Radio operators initiate the prescribed electronic counter-countermeasures (ECCM). a. Continued to operate. b. Increased the transmit power. c. Tuned the receiver for the maximum signal. d. Relocated the antenna. e. Requested a frequency change. f. Reported suspected jamming to the immediate supervisor. g. Submitted the meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion (MIJI) feeder report.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. Radio operators employ preventive ECCM and radio procedures. a. Used the secure communications security (COMSEC) equipment, if available (transmission security [TSEC]/KY-38 or TSEC/KY-57). b. Loaded the appropriate key variables using KYK-13 or KYX-15. c. Used only approved radiotelephone procedures as required by the SOI or the SSI. d. Encrypted and decrypted grid coordinates using the SOI or the SSI (not necessary in secured voice operation). e. Kept the length and the number of transmissions to a minimum (not more than 20 seconds per transmission). f. Used the lowest power settings required to communicate with the desired stations. g. Used the correct call signs and frequencies. h. Observed periods of radio-listening silence. i. Adhered to the net discipline.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ

TASK: Maintain Platoon Strength (12-3-C216.03-1216)
(FM 12-6) (FM 3-3) (FM 3-5)
(TC 12-16)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The platoon has resumed combat operations. Casualties have occurred and replacements are arriving. During operations, the unit may encounter separate or multiple air; Level 1 threat; nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) threat; and terrorist attacks. Casualty processing and replacement actions continue during lulls in combat operations. This task may occur in a field or military operation or urbanized terrain (MOUT) environment. The tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) is available. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: A personnel status report that accounts for all platoon personnel is provided daily or as required.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The squad members take immediate action. a. Performed first aid on wounded soldiers. b. Requested medical aid (as needed).		
* 2. The squad leaders report the squad's personnel status. a. Accounted for all assigned or attached personnel. b. Prepared Department of the Army (DA) Form 1156 for killed or wounded soldiers (body under United States (US) control). c. Prepared DA Form 1155 for captured or missing soldiers (body not under US control). d. Forwarded reports and completed forms to the company command post (CP).		
* 3. The platoon leader or platoon sergeant (PSG) processes strength information. a. Consolidated squad personnel reports. b. Recorded situation reports (SITREPS) and other personnel information. c. Directed cross-leveling training to fill critical positions caused by casualties. d. Collected casualty reports (DA Forms 1155 and 1156). e. Updated the battle roster or the platoon strength accountability system. f. Determined critical replacement requirements. g. Prepared a strength report according to the unit standing operating procedure (SOP).		
* 4. The platoon leader or PSG processes replacements. a. Briefed replacements on the mission, the tactical situation, platoon policies and procedures, specific duties, and site or platoon orientation. b. Entered the soldiers' names, military occupation skill (MOS), and duty position into the platoon accountability system or on the battle roster. c. Inspected the soldiers for combat critical clothing and equipment. d. Arranged for the issue of missing required items of combat critical clothing and equipment. e. Implemented the buddy system.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
f. Arranged for the movement of soldiers to assignments. * 5. The platoon leader or PSG reports personnel status. a. Forwarded completed DA Forms 1155 and 1156 higher HQ. b. Transmitted strength report and other requested personnel information.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-430-0008	Reorganize a Platoon Following Enemy Contact While in the Defense	STP 21-24-SMCT
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Issue an Operation Order (OPORD) (03-3-0008)
(FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The BIDS team leader has just received the OPORD for a mission from higher headquarters (HQ) and has all the information necessary to write his order. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The mission is planned. The OPORD is prepared within the time available, in the correct format, and includes all necessary information.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The BIDS team leader plans the operation using troop-leading procedures. a. Received the mission completely and correctly. b. Issued a warning order to his HQ and leaders stating as a minimum, the mission, the time of the mission, specific instructions, and the time and place for his OPORD. c. Made a tentative plan based on mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations (METT-TC) factors. d. If necessary, a HQ leader started the unit's movement. e. Reconnoitered the operations area, making a map reconnaissance at a minimum. f. Coordinated details and requirements of the plan with supported, adjacent, and higher units. g. Completed the plan, with assistance from the higher HQ's operations section. h. Issued the complete order to the unit with two-thirds of the preparatory time remaining before the start of the mission (one-third/two-thirds rule). i. Inspected and supervised mission preparation in the HQ and the platoon and rehearsed the mission with the unit (for unit missions).		
* 2. The BIDS team leader prepares paragraph 1, Situation, of the OPORD, which includes information concerning-- a. Enemy forces, to include their locations, strengths, weaknesses, and recent activities. b. Friendly forces, to include the mission and actions of higher HQ and supported or supporting units. c. Attachments and detachments, to include full identification and effective times.		
* 3. The BIDS team leader prepares paragraph 2, Mission, of the OPORD ensuring a clear, concise statement containing who, what, when, where, and why.		
* 4. The BIDS team leader prepares paragraph III, Execution, of the OPORD and explains in as much detail as necessary the-- a. Concept of the operation. The scheme of maneuver and fire support plan. b. Subordinate unit instructions for each platoon and the HQ.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Coordinating instructions for one or more elements. * 5. The BIDS team leader prepares paragraph 4, Service Support, of the OPORD, to include-- a. Rations. b. Petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) supplies. c. Ammunition. d. Medical support. e. Maintenance, recovery, and Class IX support. f. Other administrative and supply information required by the mission. * 6. The BIDS team leader prepares paragraph 5, Command and Signal, of the OPORD. a. Command information included the-- (1) Location of the command element during operations. (2) Order of assumption of command. b. Signal information included-- (1) Frequencies and call signs. (2) Challenges and passwords. (3) Signals and code words.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
071-326-5626	Prepare an Oral Operation Order	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-326-5775	Coordinate with an Adjacent Platoon	STP 21-24-SMCT
071-332-5000	Prepare an Operations Overlay	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
BIDS PLT HQ
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Prepare for Operations (03-3-0009)
(FM 3-100) (FM 3-3) (FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit occupies an assembly area (AA) or is stationary during a lull in operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit personnel and equipment are prepared to continue the mission. The unit performs subtasks whenever the situation permits, often in response to a unit warning order.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. BIDS team leader or platoon sergeants supervise unit soldiers performing preventive-maintenance checks and services (PMCS) according to appropriate vehicle technical manuals (TMs). a. Soldiers corrected shortcomings or reported them to the unit's maintenance section. b. The BIDS team leader, operations officer, platoon leader or platoon sergeants, and the motor sergeant ensured that the maintenance section performed repairs and services in the priority prescribed by the commander.		
* 2. BIDS team leader or platoon sergeants ensure that soldiers refuel vehicles and equipment.		
* 3. BIDS team leader or platoon sergeants conduct prepare-to-fire checks and prepare weapons, ensuring that soldiers-- a. Performed functional checks on all weapons to make sure they were operational. b. Loaded magazines and ammunition according to the weapon's TM, the vehicle's load plan, and the unit's standing operating procedure (SOP).		
* 4. BIDS team leader or platoon sergeants supervise unit soldiers performing PMCS according to appropriate equipment TMs, ensuring that soldiers-- a. Wore the specified protective gear, such as their-- (1) Protective overgarment. (2) Body armor and helmet. (3) Protective mask (worn or carried). b. Fit all protective masks (whether worn or carried) and checked for leaks. c. Had their decontamination kits present and stowed in or on the mask carriers. d. Cleaned and performed functional checks on all individual weapons. e. Cleaned all functional magazines; loaded them with the appropriate ammunition and stowed them in ammunition pouches. f. Stowed grenades securely with the pins remaining bent. g. Fit and wore individual load-carrying equipment (LCE), such as backpacks, according to the unit's SOP with all strap ends secured. h. Filled canteens with potable water. i. Wore identification tags around their neck, taped to prevent noise.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
j. Carried Department of Defense (DD) Form 2A. k. Shaved closely, cut their hair, washed, and changed their underclothes often. l. Cleaned and placed bandages on minor wounds, scratches, and abrasions to prevent infections. m. Had personal-hygiene equipment and extra clothing in their rucksacks and/or duffel bags as specified in the unit's SOP. * 5. BIDS team leader or platoon sergeants and soldiers load the vehicle according to the appropriate TM and the unit's loading plan. a. Mounted, stowed, and secured all weapons, equipment, ammunition, supplies, and personal equipment according to the unit's loading plan. b. Ensured that ammunition was readily available to replenish weapons. c. Stowed tools and camouflage nets to permit rapid access for repairs and position preparation. d. Ensured that personal equipment did not interfere with access to critical items or the employment of weapons. e. Ensured that stowed equipment did not interfere with or limit the driver's observation, the airflow to the engine, or communications equipment. f. Protected externally stowed items from possible contamination and moisture, as necessary.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
031-504-1008	Operate the M8A1 Alarm System	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
031-504-1013	Operate the M22 Automatic Chemical Agent Alarm	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
031-505-1011	Operate the AN/PDR27-Series Radiac Set	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
071-311-2025	Maintain an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2026	Perform a Function Check on an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2027	Load an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2028	Unload an M16A1 or M16A2 Rifle	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-311-2126	Perform a Function Check on an M203 Grenade Launcher	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
071-312-3026	Perform a Function Check on an M60 Machine Gun	STP 21-1-SMCT
071-325-4401	Perform Safety Checks on Hand Grenades	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
551-721-1352	Perform Vehicle Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)	STP 21-1-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
COMPANY

TASK: Establish and Operate the Harris High Frequency (HF) Radio Set (03-3-0010)
(TM 3-6665-350-12&P) (FM 24-1) (FM 24-18)
(FM 24-19) (FM 24-35)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is tactically deployed and must establish the communication networks. Operators were briefed and issued signal-operating instructions (SOI) and standing signal instructions (SSI) extracts and numerical cipher, authentication system, and operations codes brevity lists. Situational hazards such as nuclear, biological and chemical (NBC) conditions, opposing forces (OPFOR), electronic warfare, and directional finding exist. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Operators establish and enter a radio net no later than (NLT) the time prescribed in the operation order (OPORD). The net is not compromised. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The operator prepares the Harris HF radio set for operations and perform the self-test for operations. a. Placed the function control knob in the TEST position. b. Pressed the left and right arrow keys until the message TEST and VERSION appeared, then pressed ENTER. c. Checked the screen for one of four displays: (1) "SELF TEST" "IN PROGRESS." (2) MODULE #: A02, FAULT #: F12. (3) SELF-TEST DONE "NO ERRORS." (4) TEST FAILED, RADIO COMM FAULT. d. Pressed CLEAR or ENTER after the test was completed. NOTE: Do not change any controls on the radio during the SELF-TEST. This may cause false indications.		
2. The operator performs a test to check or change the frequency of the current single-side band (SSB) channel. a. Placed the function control knob in the TEST position. b. Pressed the left and right arrow keys until the message TEST VERSION "VSWR" appeared, then pressed ENTER. c. Pressed the up and down arrow keys to select the frequency programmed into the present SSB channel (or used the number keys to choose any other frequency). d. Pressed CLEAR or ENTER when the test was completed.		
3. The operator operates the SSB. a. Placed the function control knob in the SSB position. b. Selected a channel. (1) Used the control knob to select channels from 01 to 09. (2) Turned the channel control knob to "M" to select channels from 00 to 99.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Pressed the number keys to enter the desired channel and then pressed ENTER. d. Selected the SCRATCHPAD channel. (1) Placed the channel control knob in the "M" position, then pressed [0] [0], then pressed ENTER. (2) To change frequency, pressed the arrow key pointing right twice, entered the desired frequency ([1][2][1][2][5][0]), then pressed ENTER. (3) Pressed ENTER to make transfer frequency (TX) equal to receive frequency (RX). 4. The operator changes the operating mode. a. Pressed the right arrow key and the up arrow key until they reached the desired mode, then pressed ENTER. b. To select a temporary operating mode on a programmed channel, pressed the right arrow key and the up arrow key until the desired mode was reached, then pressed ENTER. 5. The operator turns the function control knob to ALE to scan programmed channels. 6. The operator stops ALE scan while the radio is in the scan mode. a. Pressed CLEAR to stop the radio on a channel. b. Pressed the up arrow key to scroll through the channels in-group. c. Pressed CLEAR to resume the scan mode. 7. The operator uses link quality analysis (LQA) SOUND. a. Pressed the OPT, selected LQA, and pressed ENTER while in the scan mode. b. Pressed the up arrow key to IMMEDIATE LQA EXCHANGE mode. c. Chose SOUND and pressed ENTER. d. Pressed the up arrow key to scroll through SELF-addresses, selected SELF-address and pressed ENTER. e. Monitored the net to verify if the radio transmitted the sound to stations within the net. f. Monitored the radio display of the station receiving sounds. g. Monitored the radio to determine when the transmitted sounds were completed. 8. The operator performs procedures to use the LQA EXCHANGE. a. Pressed the OPT, selected LQA, and pressed ENTER while in the scan mode of operations. b. Selected EXCHANGE and pressed ENTER. c. Pressed the up arrow key to scroll through the addresses. d. Chose the target address, pressed ENTER (may choose individual or net address). e. Checked the display of radio stations receiving the LQA exchange. f. Monitored the radio set to determine when it returned to the scan mode after the LQA exchange was completed. g. Checked the radio to verify that it evaluated all common frequencies. h. Checked the display of radio stations receiving the LQA exchange. i. Monitored the radio set to determine when it returned to the scan mode after the LQA exchange was completed. 9. The operator uses ALE CALL. a. Pressed CALL while in the scan mode of operations. b. Chose AUTO and pressed ENTER.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Pressed the up arrow key to scroll through the target addresses. d. Chose the desired target address and pressed ENTER. e. Checked the radio to see if it attempted to establish a link on the best available frequency, based on LQA scores. f. Monitored the radio set to determine if a LINK was established. g. Monitored the set to determine if the radio displayed a target address after one microphone was enabled (keyed). h. Monitored the set to determine the NO RESPONSE cue if no LINK was established. i. Monitored the set to determine when it returned to the scan mode of operations after using the ALE CALL mode.		
10. The operator uses the ALE MANUAL CALL. a. Pressed CALL while in the scan mode of operations. b. Pressed the up arrow key, chose MANUAL, and pressed ENTER. c. Pressed the up arrow key to scroll through the target addresses. d. Chose the desired target address and pressed ENTER. e. Entered the desired channel number and pressed ENTER. f. Checked to determine if the radio set attempted to establish a LINK on the selected frequency. g. Checked the set to verify the radio display once a LINK was established. h. Monitored the set to determine when the radio set returned to the scan mode of operations.		
11. The operator uses the ALE NET CALL. a. Pressed CALL, chose AUTO or MANUAL, and pressed ENTER while in the scan mode of operations. b. Pressed the up arrow key to scroll through the desired call addresses. c. Chose the target net address and pressed ENTER. d. Monitored the set to determine when the radio returned to the scan mode of operations. e. Checked the set to verify the radio display once a LINK was established. f. Checked the set to determine if no LINK was established. g. Monitored the set to determine when the radio returned to the scan mode of operations.		
12. The operator receives a call. a. Monitored the radio display to determine when an incoming call or LQA was received. b. Monitored to verify that the incoming call was addressed to the unit; if it was not addressed to the unit, resumed the scanning mode of operations.		
13. The operator terminates a call. a. Pressed CLEAR while in the linked mode of operations and-- (1) Pressed ENTER to terminate the current call or-- (2) Pressed the up arrow key and ENTER to cancel termination. b. Monitored the set to determine when the radio returned all units in the link to the scan mode of operations.		
14. The operator performs procedures to operate the ZEROIZE function. CRITICAL NOTE: DO NOT PERFORM THIS PROCEDURE UNLESS TOLD TO DO SO BY THE COMMANDER OR HIGHER HEADQUARTERS. THIS PROCEDURE WILL ERASE ALL PROGRAMMED SETTINGS AND WILL REQUIRE HIGHER-LEVEL MAINTENANCE TO REPROGRAM THE RADIO SET. a. Turned the function control knob to ZERO.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: The operator must pull the function control knob out and then turn the function control knob to the ZERO position. b. Pressed the up arrow key to receive the YES prompt. c. Pressed the ENTER key. d. Monitored the set to verify the radio display while the set was ZEROIZING. e. Monitored the set to determine when the radio display finished ZEROIZING. f. Turned the function control knob to remote (RMT) position. 15. The operator establishes communication with all applicable units operating in the net.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications	MOS E 1-S 9
113-573-4006	Use the KTC 1400(*) Numerical Cipher/Authentication System	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
113-573-8006	Use an Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)	STP 21-24-SMCT

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: BIDS PLT HQ
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
BIDS TEAMS

TASK: Establish Wire Communications (03-3-0013)
(FM 24-1) (FM 24-18) (TC 24-20)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is conducting a tactical mission and has temporarily halted. Field telephones, field wire WD-1, field switchboards, and signal operation instructions (SOI) are available. Situational hazards such as chemical or biological contamination may be present in the area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit has operational wire communications according to the operation order (OPORD) and the standing operating procedure (SOP).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The wire team installs the cable, distribution boxes, and telephone instruments. a. Laid the field wire and installed telephones as directed by the commander, the operations officer, or the first sergeant. b. Tested the cable before and during the installation. c. Secured the cable at the starting point and at changes in direction of the construction to reduce strain. d. Used proper hardware and ties for hanging tension bridges and securing points. e. Tagged the cable. f. Used terrain and vegetation to enhance concealment. g. Ensured that the personnel of all overhead construction areas observed clearance requirements. h. Coordinated the telephone installation with subscribers. i. Ensured that construction techniques met requirements. NOTE: The securing of the cable overhead and the policing of the cable is completed after the overall installation. 2. Communications personnel install the telephone switchboard. a. Positioned the telephone switchboard. b. Grounded the equipment. c. Performed preinstallation switchboard procedures. d. Labeled the switchboard according to the telephone directory and the telephone traffic diagram. e. Connected local and trunk wire pairs. 3. The designated switchboard operator operates the telephone switchboard. a. In the support role, the communications noncommissioned officer (NCO) supervised operations and established sufficient manning for mission accomplishment. The team-- (1) Ensured that the switchboard was operational to the extent that circuits were terminated and rung down as they became operational. (2) Processed calls. (3) Updated the communication traffic diagrams, as required. b. For internal evaluation, the team-- (1) Rang down all required circuits within 5 minutes.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Processed all required calls within 10 minutes. 4. Communications personnel perform preventive maintenance on wire or cable. The team locates and corrects faults within 30 minutes to the following specifications: a. Maintained the required amount of slack in the wire or cable. b. Kept wire splices and cable hooks clear of standing water. c. Made timely replacements of cable and repaired field wire, as required. 5. Communications personnel recover field wire or cable to the following specifications: a. Recovered the wire or cable without damage. b. Wound the wire or cable evenly on reels with sufficient slack at the start to facilitate subsequent testing and servicing. c. Tagged unserviceable wire or cable. 6. The unit communications security (COMSEC) manager monitors unit operations for the use of COMSEC measures. a. Ensured that names of persons, equipment, units, and locations were not used over nonsecure communications. b. Ensured that sensitive information that had to be transmitted by electrical means was encrypted using an authorized crypto system (when using nonsecure equipment). c. Ensured that COMSEC discrepancies were reported and corrected by the wire net control station (NCS). NOTE: COMSEC discrepancies are reported to the operations officer by the NCS.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title	References
113-600-1012	Install Telephone Set TA-312/PT For Operation	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)
113-600-2007	Operate Telephone Set TA-312/PT	STP 3-54B1-SM STP 3-CST (ST)

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
BIDS PLT HQ
BIDS TEAMS
COMPANY HEADQUARTERS

TASK: Coordinate with Unit Commander or Higher Headquarters (HQ) for Unit Employment (03-3-0030)

(FM 3-100) (FM 3-19) (FM 3-3)
(FM 3-4) (FM 3-5) (FM 3-50)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The unit is alerted to start planning and preparing to support combat operations. Communications have been established with applicable units and the controlling higher HQ and the commander or battle staff personnel where the biological detection unit will set up and conduct operations. The biological detection unit has current copies of unit load plans, a tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP), and the higher HQ's TSOP. The unit is supported by or can anticipate future support by higher HQ. Enemy forces possess the capability to employ weapons of mass destruction and may have already employed them. The BIDS platoon (BDP) is tasked to support combat operations across the corps's area of operations (AO). Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit coordinates with supported unit or element(s), subordinate unit or element(s), and higher HQ for all locations and sites to conduct biological surveillance operations. The unit coordinates for food; water; petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) products; and other logistical items. The unit submits biological reports to applicable units and higher HQ as required.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The unit performs internal staff coordination. a. Coordinated with the unit commander or higher HQ, Adjutant (US Army) (S1) staff for personnel shortages. b. Coordinated with the unit commander or higher HQ, Intelligence Office (US Army) (S2) staff on the intelligence situation. c. Coordinated with the unit commander or higher HQ, Operations and Training Officer (US Army) (S3) staff on the mission and requirements. d. Coordinated with the unit commander or higher HQ, Supply Officer (US Army) (S4) staff on the resupply of fuel, decontamination expendables, fog oil, and other logistical areas. e. Coordinated with the higher HQ for approval on the locations of sites for biological surveillance operations.		
2. The unit coordinates operational support. a. Coordinated for alternate biological surveillance sites, as required. b. Coordinated and briefed the unit commander or the key unit leader on the mission, plan, and other requirements. c. Coordinated with the supported unit or other key element(s) on the mission, plans, and requirements. d. Coordinated with aviation personnel for assets for missions involving the Long Range Biological Standoff Detection System (LRBSDS) as required.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Coordinated and established radio communication nets, reporting procedures, types of biological reports to submit to applicable units and higher HQ, and command and control for biological surveillance missions and operations.		
3. The unit coordinates external support.		
a. Coordinated with the parent organization (if the unit or element was operational controlled [OPCON]) for other POL products, maintenance support, food and water, and logistical supplies, as required.		
b. Coordinated with higher HQ on biological surveillance missions, as required.		
* 4. The unit leader briefs the higher HQ S3 and/or commander on the mission plans and requirements.		
5. The BDP submits status reports to the unit commander and higher HQ when the coordination for unit employment is completed.		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS: NONE

SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS: NONE

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS: NONE

CHAPTER 6

External Evaluation

6-1. Introduction. To test the capabilities of the BIDS platoon, the parent headquarters (HQ) develops a unit external evaluation. External evaluations are administered at the discretion of the chain-of-command and are conducted to evaluate the unit's ability to perform its critical wartime missions. This chapter is a guide for the HQ preparing the unit external evaluation. Using units will modify the evaluation based on METT-TC factors and other considerations as deemed appropriate by the commander. This evaluation assesses the tactical and technical proficiency of the unit. An analysis of this evaluation provides feedback on the strengths and weaknesses and forms a basis for future training.

6-2. Management of Time and Personnel. The external evaluation should last about 72 hours. The unit is evaluated on collective tasks or activities. Some of these, such as planning operations, may not involve OPFOR. Assuming that ten of the selected activities require OPFOR, as few as 2 or as many as 20 personnel may be needed. This depends on the activities selected for evaluation. The Os/Cs must stay with the HQ elements before, during, and after the execution of their missions or activities to effectively conduct an AAR.

6-3. Preparation of the Evaluation. If the evaluation is to be a valid measure of the unit's abilities, the evaluating HQ must standardize available assets and plan carefully to provide the PLT with the material and assets it needs for success. This section outlines the steps that the evaluating HQ must accomplish before the evaluation begins.

a. The sample evaluation scenario contains the major missions necessary to execute the evaluation. Tasks must be added to complement the general scenario developed by the implementing headquarters. It is impossible to evaluate every task contained in the MTP; therefore, selective tailoring is necessary.

(1) Identify the major missions to be evaluated for each echelon or element using Table 2 in Chapter 2. Record the selected missions on the unit proficiency work sheet (UPW) (Figure 6-1).

(2) List each mission on the task summary sheet (Figure 6-2). Use a separate task summary sheet for each mission evaluated.

(3) Select the tasks for the evaluation of every mission. List the selected tasks on the task summary sheets, which are used for recording the results of the evaluation.

(4) Compile the selected missions and tasks so they will occur logically. You must remember that certain tasks will be evaluated more than once for each module. The training and evaluation outline pages that are evaluated in two or more modules may be grouped for ease of evaluation.

(5) Organize the selected missions or tasks into O/C packets for each O/C. The following items must be included in the O/C packet:

(a) Unit proficiency work sheet.

(b) Task summary sheet.

(c) Consolidated support requirements.

(d) Unit data sheet (Figure 6-3).

(e) Environmental data report (Figure 6-4).

(f) Personnel and equipment loss report (Figure 6-5).

Unit: ______________________________ **Date:** _____________________

Number	**Unit Mission/Task**	**Section/ Squad**	**Section/ Squad**	**Section/ Squad**	**Section/ Squad**	**Unit Overall Rating and Remarks**
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	
		GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	GO NO-GO	

NOTE: If more space is required for remarks, use the backside of this form.

Figure 6-1. Sample Unit Proficiency Work Sheet

TASK SUMMARY SHEET

Mission:

Task Titles	T&EO Number	Evaluation GO	NO-GO

Observer/controller's signature: _____

NOTE: A separate task summary sheet will be prepared for each mission evaluated. O/C comments may be placed on an enclosure to the task summary sheet.

Figure 6-2. Sample Task Summary Sheet

UNIT DATA SHEET

1. Unit designation: _____ Date: _____

2. Unit leaders: (Circle the most correct answer.)

Position	Rank	Time in unit (months)				
Platoon Leader	1LT/2LT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
Platoon Sergeant	SFC/SSG	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
1st squad leader	SSG/SGT/SPC	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
2nd squad leader	SSG/SGT/SPC	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19
3rd squad leader	SSG/SGT/SPC	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	>19

3. Unit strength (excluding leaders):

4. Equipment shortages (major items):

5. Comments:

Observers/controller's signature:

Figure 6-3. Sample Unit Data Sheet

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET

Exercise number and description:

Date and time the exercise started:

Date and time the exercise ended:

1. Weather conditions: (Circle the appropriate description.)

Clear Partly Cloudy Cloudy Hazy Rain Snow Fog

Other

Temperature:

i422. Ground conditions: (Circle the appropriate description.)

Dry Wet Ice Snow

Other:

3. Light conditions: (Circle the appropriate description.)

Day Night

Moon phase 1/4 1/2 3/4 Full

Average range of visibility due to terrain:

4. Remarks:

Figure 6-4. Sample Environmental Data Sheet

PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT LOSS REPORT					
Mission Title or Task Number	**Date and Time of Enemy Contact**	**Friendly KIA/WIA**	**Enemy KIA/WIA**	**Friendly Vehicles Destroyed**	**Enemy Vehicles Destroyed**
Comments:					

Figure 6-5. Sample Personnel and Equipment Loss Report

(g) Scenario and master events list (MEL).

(h) FRAGOs, OPORDs, and messages as developed by the evaluating HQ.

(i) T&EOs from Chapter 5.

b. Forecasting and Requisitioning Resources. The unit must have adequate resources and time to train, evaluate, and retrain collective and individual skills before the evaluation. The unit or element that has little or no training before the evaluation cannot do well. The chain of command must check all weapons, vehicles, radios, and special equipment for serviceability and prepare its own consolidated support requirements (Table 6-1).

Table 6-1. Sample Consolidated List of Support Requirements

Ammunition	**DODIC**	**Estimated Basic Load**	
5.56 mm (blank)	A080	150 rounds per rifle	
7.62 mm (blank)	A111	400 rounds per M60	
Hand grenade (practice)	G818	2 per rifleman	
Hand grenade fuse (practice)	G878	2 per rifleman	
ATWEES cartridges (AT-4)	L367	4 each per company (inert) (viper or law)	
Other Items			
Batteries BA 200 (6-volt)		12 each	
Batteries BA 3030 (9-volt)		140 each	
Miles Equipment	**PLT**	**O/C**	**OPFOR**
M16 system	32		15
M60 system	3		1
Controller guns		2	
Small-arms alignment fixture		1	
NOTE: Ammunition and demolitions are basic loads and should be restocked during the FTX according to use.			

c. Selecting and Preparing the Field Evaluation Sites. When selecting and preparing for the field test site, consider the--

(1) Type of terrain. The terrain should offer covered and concealed routes to the evaluation sites. Avoid using terrain that limits the leader to a geographical “school” solution.

(2) Administrative site. An evaluation headquarters is desirable to debrief Os/Cs and section members and to serve as a central location for data collection.

d. The unit should be briefed on the--

(1) Evaluation control system, its function, and the use of the results.

(2) System the Os/Cs will use for scoring.

e. Planning Indirect Fire Simulation. Because it greatly influences the outcome of battles, reaction to indirect fire is an important consideration of the evaluation. Indirect fire simulation requires considerable planning to achieve realism.

(1) The fire marker control system outlined in Training Circular (TC) 25-6 is a recommended method of simulating indirect fire. Due to the amount of required resources, this method may be difficult to support.

(2) The commander may use the evaluation control headquarters method or the simulation without OPFOR method to evaluate the unit's ability to indirect fire. If the evaluation control headquarters method is used, the OPFOR will initiate a call for fire to the evaluation control headquarters, which will simulate the tactical FDC. The control headquarters would then relay the delivery data to the Os/Cs who would mark the impact of the round with artillery simulators and assess appropriate casualties. If an OPFOR is not used, the O/C may ignite artillery simulators and observe the unit's reactions. The FM 25 series provide assessment and computation tables which may be used to determine casualties. Indirect fire simulation must be realistic and limited to what the unit could reasonably expect under combat conditions.

6-4. Selecting the Observers/Controllers.

a. The Os/Cs must know the unit's missions, organization, equipment, and employment. The senior O/C should be at least equal in rank to the unit commander and have successfully performed in that specific or similar command position.

b. The following are the minimum rank and experience requirements for Os/Cs:

(1) The company O/C will be an officer with company command experience.

(2) The platoon or section Os/Cs will be LT or NCO rank with platoon or section experience.

(3) The recorder will be an officer or NCO at the evaluation control headquarters who receives "kill" information results and time data from the Os/Cs.

6-5. Training the Observer Controllers. The Os/Cs standardize administration of the valuation by understanding the following functional areas:

a. Evaluation design. Each part is designed to evaluate specific missions or tasks within the overall scenario. Os/Cs must thoroughly understand the evaluation and correctly implement it.

b. Multi-integrated laser-engagement system. Each O/C, regardless of position, must have full knowledge of the unit's weapons and vehicles and must also thoroughly understand the MILES being used. The unit commander is responsible for ensuring that all MILES equipment is functional before each part of the scenario.

c. Evaluation Control System. This system ensures that the evaluation is administered in a consistent and standardized manner and that correct data is collected for the final evaluation. The unit should be briefed on the evaluation control system, its function, and the use of the results. The system includes the following elements:

(1) Rules of engagement.

(2) Os/Cs duties and responsibilities.

(3) Communication systems.

(4) The evaluation data collection plan.

6-6. Recording External Evaluation Data.

a. When the section has completed the evaluation, the senior O/C collects all packets used by the evaluation team. The sheets are completed and turned in to the evaluating headquarters. The evaluating headquarters develops the data recording instruments for the Os/Cs. The unit data sheet documents demographics information that may reflect a unit's performance (for example, new leaders, low strength). The environmental data sheet documents weather information so a comparison of missions conducted under differing environmental conditions can be made. The personnel and equipment loss report documents information that may affect the unit's degree of success during engagements with the OPFOR.

b. The senior O/C is responsible for completing the external evaluation report using his own observations as well as those of subordinate Os/Cs. Subordinate Os/Cs use the task evaluation criteria (T&EOs from Chapter 5 and Task Summary Sheets) to determine overall proficiency in their particular areas. These may be subjective or objective in nature and based on perceived mission accomplishments and observations. It should be noted that the objective T&EOs (the GO and NO GO responses) are included in the performance matrixes and serve as an important tool for units in determining strengths and weaknesses as related to specific missions and tasks. The senior O/C compiles the external evaluation results as prescribed by the evaluating commander. Deviations from the task standard assessed by the company O/C may be addressed in the senior O/C comments portion of the UPW.

6-7. Selecting and Training the OPFOR. Selecting and training of the OPFOR is crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. The OPFOR provide one of the control measures that influences the conditions under which the evaluation is administered. The unit should face an opponent that realistically resembles the threat in strength, weapons, and skill.

a. Selection. Any qualified Skill Level 1 or 2 soldier can serve as OPFOR. Ideally, they should be a small cohesive unit under the control of their leader or commander.

b. Training. The OPFOR must understand six major issues:

(1) Installation and operation of the MILES devices.

(2) Rules of engagement.

(3) Threat small unit tactics.

(4) Training scenarios.

(5) OPFOR weapons and equipment, if available.

(6) Safety.

c. OPFOR strength.

(1) Offense. Using MILES, the unit should outnumber the OPFOR three to one if an attack is to be successful. If the OPFOR are stronger than this ratio, only the most exceptional unit will be successful. They must be armed with weapons capable of defeating any of the unit's assets. As a general rule, the OPFOR should be strong enough to offer the unit a realistic challenge, but one that the unit can defeat when proper tactics are employed.

(2) Defense. The OPFOR, at a minimum, should have a three-to-one superiority, because anything less will not have sufficient weapons and ammunition to conduct a successful attack. They must be more than merely a series of targets to be destroyed. The OPFOR should be allowed to plan their own attack for each mission and not be forced into a "canned" attack that all units will quickly defeat. Once the OPFOR establish their plan, they must use the same plan for all other like units for that event in order to maintain the objectivity and standardization of the evaluation.

6-4. Conducting the Evaluation. The evaluation is divided into three distinct areas, each requiring preparation and coordination.

a. Preevaluation. All Os/Cs must conduct a map reconnaissance of the area to ensure that they understand the location of the unit boundary, the location of other units, and the most likely avenues of approach throughout the area of operations.

b. Evaluation.

(1) The evaluating team controls the unit's evaluation in two ways. First, it establishes control measures in the OPORD or a FRAGO. Second, it works through the higher headquarters' staff (simulated by the senior O/C) on the control net. The team does not control in the traditional sense, instead it accompanies the unit as observers. Only the senior O/C has direct verbal contact with the unit commander. All other Os/Cs do not speak to, aid, advise, point out positions, or in any way influence the unit’s performance, except for a possible or actual safety issue or emergency. Os/Cs are neutral and must remain so throughout the evaluation.

(2) The platoon leader begins with the first module when the OPORD has been issued. The tasks prescribed in the first module of the test scenario are then executed. Time constraints are adhered to and from this point on all successive modules begin with a FRAGO or an OPORD.

(3) Senior evaluators should terminate a module when the platoon has completed all the missions or tasks in a particular module or has suffered so many casualties or damage that the module cannot be completed. The O/C must indicate the reason for the termination in the margin of the Os/Cs task summary sheet and report his action to the evaluation control headquarters. The completion of each mission or task is indicated by "Prepare for Future Operations." During this phase, the senior evaluator may issue the FRAGO or OPORD for the next module. At this time Os/Cs must--

(a) Inspect all MILES equipment, record “kill” codes, and reset the equipment. Any damaged or inoperative MILES equipment is replaced.

(b) Resolve all casualty data to determine the time, place, number, and cause of casualties. This information I reported to the recorder in the evaluation control headquarters.

(c) Debrief the company during the briefs to answer any questions. The senior evaluator directs the company to continue its mission when the FRAGO or OPORD for the next mission is given.

(4) During the evaluation--

(a) Use GO or NO GO responses on T&EOs to record whether or not standards were met.

(b) Ensure that all communications links and equipment are functional.

(c) Report major “kills” (vehicles and equipment).

(d) Report major weapons fired. Together with reporting major kills, this is the best method for determining direct-fire effectiveness. Both significant firings and hits are reported to the evaluation control headquarters.

(e) Observe critical tactical events by time. Os/Cs must be alert to spot and record any action that might have an effect on later performance or mission accomplishment.

(f) Record routes of travel and platoon/squad locations.

(g) Enforce rules of engagement.

(h) Enforce safety.

(i) Terminate the mission.

c. Post evaluation. When the evaluation has been terminated, move the unit to a debriefing area and perform the following actions before the unit moves back into garrison:

(1) The senior O/C debriefs subordinate Os/Cs and compiles all data for the evaluation.

(2) If the O/C's scoring system is used, the senior O/C fills out the appropriate matrixes.

(3) When completed, the O/C turns in all evaluator packets and scoring cards to the control headquarters for recording and analyzing.

(4) The O/C conducts an AAR of the element's performance.

(5) Each shift O/C conducts an AAR of the element's performance.

6-5. Scoring. When the section has completed the evaluation, the senior O/C collects all packets used by the O/C team. The sheets are completed and turned in to the evaluation headquarters. The unit data report (Figure 64) presents demographic information that may reflect on a unit's performance (for example new leaders, low strength). The environmental data report (Figure 65) presents weather information so a comparison of missions conducted under differing environmental conditions can be made. The section O/C completes the overall evaluation report using his own observations as well as those of his subordinates.

6-6. Preparation of the Scoring System Matrix.

a. General procedures. The mission and task accomplishment standards (GO/NO GO scale) evaluate overall unit proficiency and assess mission accomplishment in each performance matrix. Each performance matrix also includes a small section for O/C comments. These may be subjective or objective in nature and based on perceived mission accomplishments and observations. It should be noted that the objective T&EOs (the GO and NO GO responses) are included in the performance matrixes, and serve as an important tool for units in determining strengths and weaknesses as related to specific missions and tasks.

b. Specific procedures. The senior O/C is responsible for preparing the O/C scoring system and assessing task accomplishment standards. He accomplishes this through the input provided him by the shift Os/Cs in each of their respective evaluated areas. Although the subordinate shift Os/Cs use the training and evaluation criteria peculiar to their respective element and subsequently determine overall proficiency in their particular area, the senior O/C is responsible for assessing overall section proficiency. Deviations from the task accomplishment standard assessed by the section O/C may be addressed in the O/C comments section of each performance matrix.

6-7. Conducting the After-Action Report.

a. General. At the completion of each evaluation part, the AAR leader provides feedback to the unit in order to increase and reinforce learning. An AAR is not a critique; it is a simple recounting of the events the unit did well or did poorly. In an AAR, the leaders and soldiers of the evaluated unit are active participants in the process.

b. Feedback. In an AAR, the leaders and soldiers of the evaluated unit are active participants in the process. Because all members of the unit participate, each member becomes a source of feedback information. This provides a richer database from which key points can be drawn. For example, a soldier's assessment of the situation and the basis for that soldier's decisions are known only to that

soldier. The AAR leader tries to draw this information out so that it becomes an important part of the discussion and forms the context for discussing alternative courses of action.

c. Preparation of the AAR. AAR preparation involves five steps.

(1) Review training orders and objectives. Training objectives focus discussion of the exercise results. The FRAGOs and OPORDs included in the exercise design implement these objectives. The O/C should be familiar with the objectives, the FRAGOs, and the OPORDs so he can note orders given by leaders that either implement objectives or deviate from them.

(2) Observe the exercise. This is an active process, and the emphasis is on noting the actions that make the difference between unit success and failure. The O/C need not remain close to the unit leader; he can often see more from high ground overlooking the selected area or along the route when moving. Since unit orders may identify important activities or checkpoints, the O/C must be present when the orders are issued. Thereafter, the O/C should position himself where he can best observe anticipated critical events.

(3) Select the site and assemble the participants. After the exercise is completed select a site for the AAR. If possible, the AAR should be held where the majority of actions occurred, where the most critical events took place, or where this terrain can be observed. Most often the OPFOR or unit objective will be suitable for assembling the players and conducting the AAR.

(4) Debrief the Os/Cs. While the units are moving to the site, debrief the Os/Cs. The senior O/C must have a complete understanding of what happened in the exercise. Therefore, the fourth step in AAR preparation is to obtain a detailed description of the exercise's major events in the order they occurred. Descriptions should emerge from the debriefing of the subordinate unit Os/Cs and the OPFOR leader or controller. After the senior O/C has a sound understanding of what happened during the exercise, he reviews the critical events and ranks them in terms of their relevance to the exercise training objectives and their contribution to the exercise outcome. Then he selects as many critical events as can be covered in detail during the time allowed for the AAR and places them in chronological order.

(5) Review the events. After the senior O/C has a sound understanding of what happened during the exercise, he reviews the critical events and ranks them in terms of their relevance to the exercise training objectives and their contribution to the exercise outcome. Then he selects as many critical events as can be covered in detail during the time allowed for the AAR and places them in chronological order.

c. Conducting the AAR requires five steps.

(1) Organize the participants. When assembling the participants, the O/C or AAR leader should group them according to their organization in the exercise. Each subordinate element's O/C should remain with his unit.

(2) State the training objectives. The AAR leader asks the unit leader to make a brief statement of the training objectives for the exercise. These should be described as specifically as possible. The AAR leader also states any additional teaching points to be covered during the AAR. The number of key points should be limited to three or four to keep the AAR focused and prevent it from becoming excessively long.

(3) Lead the discussion. The AAR leader guides the discussion of the major tactical events in their order of occurrence. Diagrams help players visualize the exercise development. The AAR leader starts by sketching the main terrain features and, as the AAR proceeds, has the participants draw routes of advance, objectives, and locations of engagements. Each major event is discussed in detail to make teaching points about the unit's performance during the event. In an effective AAR, the AAR leader should--

(a) Avoid giving a critique or lecture.

(b) Guide the discussion by asking leading questions.

(c) Have the players discuss not only what happened, but also how it happened, why it happened, and how it could have been done better.

(d) Focus the discussion so important tactical and technical lessons are made explicit.

(e) Relate tactical events to subsequent results.

(f) Avoid detailed examination of events not directly related to major training objectives.

(g) Encourage the participants to use diagrams to illustrate teaching points and to show routes, PLs, and objectives.

(4) Review the sequence of the events associated with the hazards of risk assessment made before the exercise.

(a) Were effective controls put into place to avoid accidents?

(b) Was training realism reduced through artificial control measures?

(c) Were all participants aware of hazards down to the lowest level?

(d) Did any hazard present itself that was not identified, and what was done to overcome it?

(e) Discuss each incident of fratricide or near fratricide and how it can be avoided in the future.

(5) Summarize key points. The AAR leader briefly summarizes teaching points in terms of training objectives covered in the AAR. After the summary, the O/C may have a private conversation with the section leader regarding the strengths and weaknesses and what can be done to further improve the section's performance. A good AAR ensures that--

(a) Training objectives are reviewed.

(b) The leader traces the chain of events so that all participants understand the results of mistakes. One mistake is often the partial cause of another.

(c) Tactical events are clearly related to teaching points.

(d) The attention of the participants is held and that they are involved in the discussion and learn from it.

(e) The summary and new training objectives are clear and concise.

(f) Sketches, diagrams, or terrain models are used to reinforce points made in the AAR.

NOTES:
1. Subordinate evaluators may conduct an AAR after completing each module, if time permits.
2. Reference materials for conducting an AAR are TC 25-6, TC 25-20, and FM 25-101.

APPENDIX A - SAMPLE EVALUATION SCENARIO

A-1. Scenario Development.

a. Modules. The implementing headquarters must develop realistic time frames for each major mission or task. These are based on the intensity and speed of the modern battlefield and the dimensions of the field evaluation site. In the evaluation scenario example, various missions or tasks have been grouped together in a module. This allows for a continuous operation, interrupted at a logical point for the after-action review. The grouping of tasks to form a module is an important feature of the squad or platoon's evaluation. It is especially important to those tasks in which OPFOR contact is a condition, because it allows the evaluators an opportunity to assess casualties, reconstitute personnel and equipment, and quickly debrief unit leaders. At the same time, the continuity of the exercise is maintained without needless administrative halts. The modules are arranged in any order so long as a complementary tactical scenario is developed. Figure A-1 is a sample of a platoon evaluation scenario involving time allocation.

Event	Action	Estimated Time Allotted	Proposed Time Frame
	MODULE 1		
1	Conduct Pretest Activities (install and troubleshoot MILES equipment, load vehicles conduct inspections)	Before start time	--
2	Receive Warning Order; Issue the Unit's March Order for Movement to the Assembly Area	Day 1	1 hour	1900
3	Conduct a Tactical Road March		1 hour	2000
4	Occupy an AA (night); Defend Perimeter		1 hour setup 8 hours total	2100
5	Receive OPORD	Day 2	1 hour	2200
6	Conduct Biological Operations		6 hours	2300
7	Employ Signal Security (SIGSEC) Measures		Included in 5-6	--
8	Employ Countersurveillance Measures		Included in 5-7	--
9	Conduct a Tactical Road March		2 hours	0500
10	Use Passive Air Defense Measures		Included in 9	--
11	Take Active Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft		Included in 9-10	--
12	Conduct Contractor Logistics Support		1 hour	0700
13	Prepare for Continuing Operations, Conduct Sustaining Operations (evaluators assess casualties)		1 hour	0800

Figure A-1. Sample Scenario Time Allocation

Event	Action	Estimated Time Allotted	Proposed Time Frame
	MODULE 2		
14	End Mission	1 hour	0900
15	Receive a Company FRAGO	1 hour	1000
16	Conduct P3I Biological Detection Operations	6 hours	1100
17	Conduct Operational Decontamination	Included in 16	--
18	Prepare for Continuing Operations; Conduct Sustaining Operations (evaluator assess casualties)	1 hour	1700
	MODULE 3		
19	Receive a FRAGO	1 hour	1800
20	Respond to a Biological Attack	5 hours	1900
21	Conduct Biological Sampling	8 hours	2400
22	Mark a Contaminated Area	Included in 20	
23	Take Active Air-Defense Measures Against Hostile Aircraft	Included in 21	
24	Conduct Movement Techniques	Included in 21	
25	Perform Operational Decontamination	Included in 21	
26	Prepare for Continuing Operations; Conduct Sustaining Operations (evaluators assess casualties)	Day 3 1 hour	0800
27	Move Administratively to the After-Action Review (AAR) Site	1 hour	0900
28	Conduct the AAR	1 hour	1000
	Total Time:	**40 hours**	

Figure A-1. Sample Scenario Time Allocation (continued)

b. Reaction-Type Missions. At least one of the modules developed by the implementing headquarters should contain a reaction-type mission. This mission is used to evaluate the element leader's ability to exercise tactical initiative and sound judgment. For example, the element leader is given a mission requiring him to move with an infantry unit and to conduct an NBC reconnaissance mission within a specified time. This reaction-type mission requires the element leader to plan and issue a FRAGO while on the move and to execute it immediately upon reaching the selected area.

c. Terrain. The size of the field evaluation site should allow the platoon to successfully demonstrate the ability to conceal an area and make adjustments to maintain coverage when wind shifts occur. The platoon leader will consider the maximum effective range of OPFOR MILES (1,800 meters).

d. Threat Development. In developing the scenario, first consider your unit's contingency missions (coordinate with the Assistant Chief of Staff (G3) (operations and plans) or the operations and training officer [S3]). If an OPFOR is needed, have the Assistant Chief of Staff (G2) (Intelligence) or the intelligence officer (S2) provide OPFOR capabilities and intent. Threat models used at the combat training centers are a good source in building an OPFOR for the scenario. Still include the G2 or the S2 even if an OPFOR is not needed, to provide threat information needed for any FRAGOs, OPORDs, or messages supporting the scenario.

A-2. Exercise Control.

a. O/C Control. The evaluation team controls the section or element's evaluation in two ways: first, through the control measures established in paragraphs 3 and 5 of the OPORD or FRAGO, and second, through the chemical officer (may be simulated by the senior evaluator). Simply stated, the evaluation team does not control in the traditional sense, but merely accompanies the unit as observers. Only the senior evaluator has direct verbal contact with the section or element leader; all other evaluators do not speak to, aid, give advice, point out positions, or in any way influence the section or element's performance except in case of a safety emergency. Evaluators are neutral and must remain so throughout the exercise.

b. O/C Responsibilities. Once the senior O/C has issued the order for a mission and established the time and control measures, each O/C accompanies and records the activities of his assigned element as the section or element proceeds to execute the mission. Direct influence on the section or element's maneuver or actions is exerted only by the senior O/C. O/Cs speak to unit personnel only to enforce the rules of engagement or safety.

A-3. Evaluator Selection and Training.

a. O/C Requirements. The following are suggested rank and experience requirements of the evaluator team for each tested platoon:

(1) One officer (O4/O5 MOS 74A005H) with reconnaissance experience to function as the senior O/C.

(2) One officer (O3/O4 MOS 74A005H) with platoon leader experience (platoon O/C) and three NCOs (E7/E6 MOS 54B) with squad leader experience (squad O/Cs).

(3) A recorder stationed at the evaluation control headquarters to receive information, results, and time data from the O/Cs.

(4) The OPFOR leader is also considered an O/C in that he must provide input for the platoon O/Cs.

b. O/C Training. O/C training is essential to ensure that the test is administered fairly, correctly and, above all, in a standardized manner. To ensure standardized administration of the evaluation, O/Cs must understand three functional areas:

(1) Evaluation design. Each module is designed to evaluate a specific critical mission or task within the overall evaluation scenario. O/Cs must make every effort to support that evaluation. By the same token, serious thought must be given to those conditions that obstruct an accurate assessment of the unit's performance. The O/Cs must know the test thoroughly and precisely to implement it correctly.

(2) MILES (installing, operating, bore sighting, and troubleshooting). Each O/C, regardless of position, must have expert knowledge of the unit's weapons and vehicles and must also thoroughly understand the MILES being used. It is an O/C's duty to ensure all MILES equipment is functional before each module within the evaluation scenario. Poor training of evaluators may result in poor functioning of

platoon's MILES equipment. This equipment must function properly because the use of MILES to objectively assess both direct "kills" and the unit's ability to avoid fire is a major feature of the evaluation.

(3) Evaluation control system. The evaluation control system ensures that the evaluation is administered in a consistent and standardized manner and that correct data is collected for the final evaluation. It includes the following elements:

(a) Rules of engagement. Because MILES is a simulation of combat, it is not a perfect copy of the battlefield. Therefore, during use of MILES, evaluators must enforce certain rules: all participants in the evaluation must wear functional detection systems. A "superman" will quickly degrade the value of the evaluation. Once soldiers or vehicles become casualties, they are no longer participants in that module of the scenario and must follow instructions of the evaluators (or instructions on their casualty card if used). This is done to ensure casualties become a realistic "drain" on the unit.

(b) O/C duties and responsibilities. The O/C's job is to ensure that the exercise is executed and evaluated properly. Each O/C has specific responsibilities and duties to perform.

(c) Communications systems. As with most tactical exercises using a control element, a single net radio capability for use by the O/Cs is required. Trying to rely on the tested platoon's radios is hazardous, as well as a hindrance, to that unit. Sharing information on the control net is one of the best tools for understanding the current situation.

(d) Evaluation data collection. Each O/C must have a thorough understanding of the data collection plan and his specific responsibilities. Failure to collect data will result in a poor assessment of the platoon's proficiency.

d. The O/Cs should receive some classroom instruction. This requires one officer with fuel supply operation knowledge and previous experience of ARTEP evaluations and one small classroom. The O/Cs then conduct a reconnaissance of the field test area, "war-game" the refined scenario, and rehearse the evaluation procedures and exercise control system. It is essential that O/Cs become familiar with T&EO criteria in their respective areas and the desired evaluation process.

APPENDIX B - COMBINED-ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY (CATS)

B-1. General.

a. The CATS was developed to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train and identify the resources required to support that training. Upon implementation, the CATS will support training integration of heavy, light, and special-operations forces of both AC and RC soldiers. It will enable the Army to more effectively identify, manage, and program the acquisition of training resources vital to achieving and sustaining the combat readiness of the total Army.

b. The CATS concept envisions an overarching strategy that will enable the Army to focus and manage all unit and soldier training in an integrated manner. At the heart of the CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit training strategies that describe the events, frequencies, and resources required to train soldiers and units to standards. These strategies will provide field commanders with a descriptive menu for training. We recognize that while there may be a "best" way to train to standard, it is unlikely that all units will have the exact mix of resources required to execute the strategy precisely as written.

B-2. Elements of the Unit Strategies.

a. Maneuver Strategy. The maneuver strategy is intended to provide a set of recommended training frequencies for key training events in a unit and depict those resources required to support these events. See DA Pam 350-38 for an example of a maneuver training strategy. The Web site for this information is http://www.atsc.army.mil/atmd/strac.

b. Gunnery Strategy. The gunnery strategy is built around weapon systems found in the unit and is intended to provide an annual training plan and to depict resources required to support weapon training. Schools identified in DA Pam 350-38 as proponents for weapons or weapon systems have developed gunnery strategies. See DA Pam 350-38 for examples of the various weapon strategies.

c. Soldier Strategy. The soldier strategy provides an annual plan for training and maintaining skills at the individual level and lists the resources required to train a soldier. See DA Pam 350-38 for an example of a soldier training strategy.

APPENDIX C - THREAT ANALYSIS

C-1. Introduction.

a. Dramatic changes in Europe and within the former Soviet Union have reduced the likelihood of an east-west military confrontation in Europe. The threat in Europe has not gone away completely, but it is less immediate and changed in nature. Despite reductions, Russia will still have the largest army in Europe. Regardless of the stated peaceful intentions of current Russian political leaders, the Russian Armed Forces still possesses formidable capabilities, and those capabilities will remain, should conditions and intentions change. Other former Soviet republics are forming their own armed forces and could pose threats to each other or to other countries in the region. In this time of turmoil and uncertainty, the former Soviet military power remains a potentially dangerous challenge to US and North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) security. However, this remnant of the former Soviet threat is just one of many.

b. Many other nations are obtaining or developing sophisticated weaponry. Various regional conflicts could cause the US to intervene bilaterally or as part of a multinational coalition to protect our interests or those of our allies. Other potential conflict areas could call for a variety of responses by either the US or the former Soviet republics or both. The threat may come in an organized military form, which may or may not follow the former Soviet model. It may also come in the form of insurgencies, terrorism, or narcotics trafficking. The US Army needs to be prepared to respond to this broad spectrum of potential threats that it could encounter in various contingencies.

C-2. Global Threats. Modern weapons and the capability to project military power to great distances beyond its own national borders would characterize a global-type threat, such as the former Soviet one. Against such a potential adversary, the threat to rear operations would include the following:

- Armored or mechanized forces breaking into our rear area.
- Airborne, airmobile, or amphibious assault forces inserted into our rear area.
- Long-range artillery, surface-to-surface missiles, or air strikes targeting rear-area assets.
- NBC weapons.
- Radio-electronic combat aimed at jamming or destroying our communications means and disrupting our C^2.
- Agents and saboteurs.

C-3. Regional Threats. Regional threats, such as Iraq or North Korea, have less capability to project power. However, they may have some of the same weapons and organizations as a global threat. In fact, lessening superpower tensions are contributing significantly to the proliferation of sophisticated weaponry to emerging nations. This applies not only to conventional ground and air weapons, but also to chemical and nuclear weapons and missile systems. A mature regional power, possibly with a global power as a major source of its military hardware, emphasizes the ability to project its forces throughout a given region.

C-4. Local Threats. Local threats have even more localized objectives and little capability to project power beyond their own borders or their immediate neighbors. They generally have less modern equipment than global or regional threat powers or at least a limited variety of modern weapons. Their equipment may include modern small arms and light artillery (mortars, howitzers, gun-howitzers, and rocket launchers), but often does not include sophisticated weapons such as long-range conventional artillery or high-performance aircraft. A local threat may be heavily supported by a regional threat or even by a global power. In the past, for example, Cuba assisted Soviet-backed movements in Angola, Nicaragua, and Ethiopia. This outside influence will often be reflected in the equipment, organization, or tactics of the local threat forces. However, the actions of a local threat are often limited to insurgencies,

civil wars, or border disputes. Insurgents, especially those with outside help, may be able to purchase modern weapons, but may not have developed a logistics base able to sustain continuous conflict. Therefore, they often concentrate on guerrilla tactics, sabotage, assassinations, booby traps, or explosives to achieve their objectives.

C-5. Special Situations.

a. The threat in special situations includes terrorism. Terrorism may satisfy the objectives of different types of threats discussed above. Terrorists are the least likely threat to use conventional forces and thus are the hardest to anticipate or to train against. Terrorist tactics include the following:

- Assassinating or maiming.
- Arson.
- Bombing.
- Hijacking, kidnapping, or hostage taking.
- Raids and seizure of facilities.
- Sabotage.
- Hoaxes (such as bomb threats).

Aside from these threats, terrorists may also be able to obtain weapons of mass destruction. A political leadership that supports terrorism, as in Iraq, may control such NBC weapons. If nuclear weapons are too difficult to obtain, terrorists may instead employ chemical or biological weapons to reach their goals.

b. Narcotics trafficking is another special-condition threat. It may be supported or tolerated by a global power for political or economic reasons. It may also be tied in with regional or local threat powers or with terrorism. There is often a marriage of convenience between insurgent groups and the drug cartels. The cartels can spend significant amounts of money on the latest in technology for communications and security to protect their operations. They can also buy weapons and otherwise finance regional insurgencies and cross-border conflicts.

C-6. Bottom Line. The threat to rear operations includes all of the above categories. These threat categories are not mutually exclusive and may overlap with one another.

APPENDIX D - METRIC CONVERSION CHART

Table D-1. Conversion Chart (United States to Metric)

US Units	Multiplied By	Equals Metric Units
Length		
Feet	0.30480	Meters
Inches	2.54000	Centimeters
Inches	0.02540	Meters
Inches	25.40010	Millimeters
Miles (statute)	1.60930	Kilometers
Miles per hour	0.0447	Meters per second
Yards	0.91400	Meters
Volume		
Cubic feet	0.02830	Cubic meters
Cubic yards	0.76460	Cubic meters
Weight		
Pounds	453.59000	Grams
Pounds	0.45359	Kilograms
Length		
Centimeters	0.39370	Inches
Meters per second	2.23700	Miles per hour
Millimeters	0.03937	Inches
Kilometers	0.62137	Miles (statute)
Meters	3.28080	Feet
Meters	39.37000	Inches
Meters	1.09360	Yards
Volume		
Cubic meters	35.31440	Cubic feet
Cubic meters	1.30790	Cubic yards
Weight		
Kilograms	2.20460	Pounds

GLOSSARY

Section I
Abbreviations

5 Ss and T	search, silence, segregate, speed, safeguard, and tag
AA	assembly area; antiaircraft
AAR	after-action review
ABO	agent of biological origin
AC	active component; alternating current
AD	air defense; armored division
AMC	United States Army Materiel Command
AMP	ampere
AO	area of operation
AOAP	Army Oil Analysis Program
AOR	Area of Responsibility
APS	aerodynamic particle sizer
ARFOR	Army forces
ARTEP	Army Training and Evaluation Program
ATP	adenosine triphosphate
BD	buffer distance; biological defense; biological detection
BDAR	battle damage assessment repair
BDC	biological detection company; biological detection commander
BDE	brigade
BDP	biological detection platoon
BDT	biological detection team
BIDS	Biological Integrated Detection System
BIR	Biological Integrated Detection System (BIDS) incident report
BMNT	beginning morning nautical twilight.
bn	battalion

BOS	battlefield operating system
BW	biological warfare
C2	command and control
CANA	convulsant antidote for nerve agents
CAS	close-air support
CATS	combined-arms training strategy
CBDCOM	Chemical and Biological Defense Command
CBMS	Chemical Biological Mass Spectrometer
CBSCC	Chemical Biological Sampling Control Center
CBSCE	Chemical Biological Sampling Control Element
CDM	chemical downwind message
CFX	command field exercise
CIP	central information processor
CLS	contractor logistics support
CO	commissioned officer; company
COA	course of action
COMEX	communications exercise
COMSEC	communications security
CONUS	continental United States
CP	command post; checkpoint
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation
CPX	command post exercise
DA	Department of the Army; Denmark; direct action
DACG	departure airfield control group
DC	District of Columbia; dental corps; direct current
DD	Department of Defense; Defense Department
decon	decontamination
DSA	division support area

DTG	date-time group
ECCM	electronic counter-countermeasures
ECU	electronic control unit
EEFI	essential elements of friendly information
EENT	end evening nautical twilight
EPW	enemy prisoner of war
EW	electronic warfare
F	frequency; fail; Fahrenheit; full
FCM	flow cytometer
Field Training Exercise (FTX)	See "Exercise."
FM	field manual; frequency modulated/modulation
FMIB	Foreign Material Intelligence Battalion
FPF	final protective fire
FRAGO	fragmentary order
FTX	field training exercise
G2	Assistant Chief of Staff, G2 (Intelligence)
GPS	global positioning system
GSR	general support-reinforcing; ground surveillance radar
HF	high frequency
HHA	hand-held assay
HN	host nation
HQ	headquarters
HVAPS	high-volume aerodynamic particle sizer
ID	identification; infantry division
IPB	intelligence preparation of battlefield
IR	infrared; intelligence requirements
ITEP	individual training evaluation program
J2	Intelligence Directorate

J3	Operations Directorate
KIA	killed in action
km	kilometer
kw	kilowatt
LCE	load-carrying equipment
LED	light-emitting diode
LP	listening post.
LQA	link quality analysis
LRBSDS	Long-Range Biological Standoff Detection System
LRU	line replacement unit
LS	liquid sampler
LSE	logistics support element
LTIOV	latest time information is of value
LZ	landing zone
MACG	marshalling area command group
MACOM	Major Army Command
MANSCEN	United States Maneuver Support Center
MCSR	materiel condition status report
mech	mechanized
MEL	master events list
METL	mission-essential task list
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civilian considerations
MIA	Missing In Action
MIJI	meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion
MILES	Multiple Integrated Laser-Engagement System
Mini- Flo	mini-FCM
MOPP	mission-oriented protection posture
MOPP 4	mission-oriented protection posture, level 4

MOS	military occupational specialty
MOUT	military operations on urbanized terrain
MP	military police
MTMC	Military Traffic Management Command
MTP	mission training plan; MOS training plan
NATO	North Atlantic Treaty Organization
NBC	nuclear, biological, chemical
NBC 1 report	nuclear, biological, and chemical initial report.
NBC 3 report	nuclear, biological, and chemical predicted contamination/hazard areas.
NBC 5 report	nuclear, biological, and chemical report (actual contaminated area).
NCA	National Command Authorities
NCO	noncommissioned officer
NCOIC	noncommissioned officer in charge
NCS	net control station
NDI	nondevelopmental items
NMC	nonmission capable
No	number
O/C	observer/controller
O4	major
O5	lieutenant colonel
OCOKA	observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach
OCONUS	outside continental United States
OEG	operational exposure guidance; operation exposure guide
OP	observation post
OPCON	operational control
OPFOR	opposing forces
OPLAN	operation plan

OPORD	operation order
OPSEC	operations security
P3I	preplanned product improvement
PAC	Personnel and Administration Center
pam	pamphlet
PCI	precombat inspection
PDDE	power-driven decontamination equipment
PIR	priority intelligence requirements
PL	phase line; Poland
PLL	prescribed load list
plt	platoon
PMCS	preventive-maintenance checks and services
POD	port of debarkation
POE	point of embarkation
POL	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
POM	Program Objective Memorandum; prepare for overseas movement
PSG	platoon sergeant
R&S	reconnaissance and security; reconnaissance and survey
RATELO	radiotelephone operator
RC	Reserve Component
recon	reconnaissance
RP	release point
RX	receive frequency
S1	Adjutant (US Army)
S2	Intelligence Officer (US Army)
S3	Operations and Training Officer (US Army)
S4	Supply Officer (US Army)
SALUTE	size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment

SATRAN	satellite reconnaissance advance notice report; satellite transmission
SATS	Standard Army Training Systems
SCM	system control module
SCPE	simplified collective protection equipment
SHTU	simplified handheld terminal unit
SIGSEC	signal security
SINCGARS	Single-Channel Ground and Airborne Radio System
SITMAP	situation map
SITREP	situation report
Situational Training Exercise (STX)	See "Exercise."
SM	soldier's manual
SNR	signal-to-noise ratio
SOI	signal operation instructions
SOP	standing operating procedure
SP	start point
SSB	single-side band
SSI	special skill identifier; standing signal instructions
STB	super tropical bleach
STRAC	standards in training commission
STRIKWARN	strike warning
STX	situational training exercise
T&EO	training and evaluation outline
TAA	tactical assembly area
TACMET	tactical meteorological
TAMMS	The Army Maintenance Management System
TB	Technical Bulletin
TEWT	tactical exercise without troops
THS	threshold system

TM	technical manual; team
TOE	table(s) of organization and equipment
TPFDL	time-phased forces deployment list
TRADOC	United States Army Training and Doctrine Command
TSEC	transmission security
TSOP	tactical standing operating procedure
TX	transfer frequency
UAV	unmanned aerial vehicle
UH	utility helicopter
UMNCO	unit movement noncommissioned officer
US	United States
UVAPS	ultraviolet aerodynamic particle sizer
VHF	very high frequency
WCS	weapons control status
WIA	wounded in action
WO	Warrant Officer; warning order

Section II
Terms

Battlefield operating systems (BOS)
The major functions occurring on the battlefield. Each system is used by the total Army to successfully execute operations. NOTE: The blueprint is organized in three levels of war, each with its own operating systems and major functions. See TRADOC Pam 11-9., Blueprint of the Battlefield.

Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS)
The Army's overarching strategy for the current and future training of the force. Its basis is a series of branch proponent unit and institutional strategies describing training events, frequencies, and resources required to train to standard. These strategies describe how the Army will train the total force to standard in the institutions and unit and through self development. CATS also documents the quantity, and justification for all training resources required to execute the training. See "Training strategy. "

Field Manual (FM)
A DA publication that contains doctrine that prescribes how the Army and its organizations function on the battlefield in terms of missions, organizations, personnel, and equipment. The level of detail should facilitate an understanding of "what" and "how" for commanders and staffs to execute their missions and tasks. The FM may also be used to publish selected alliance doctrinal publications that are not readily integrated into other doctrinal literature.

Individual training evaluation program (ITEP)
evaluation conducted in units to provide diagnostic information to the commander and MOS proponent on the effectiveness of individual training. The three primary methods used to evaluate individual task proficiency are the common task test (CTT), commander's evaluation, and skill qualification test (SQT).

Military occupational specialty (MOS) code
A fixed number which indicates a given military occupational specialty. Also known as military occupational number and specification serial number.

mini-FCM
mini-flow cyntometer

Mission Training Plan (MTP)
A MTP provides comprehensive training and evaluation outlines, and exercise concepts and related training management aids to assist field commanders in the planning and execution of effective unit training. It provides units with a clear description of "what" and "how" to train to achieve wartime mission proficiency.

Technical manual (TM)
A publication that describes equipment, weapons, or weapons systems with instructions for effective use. It may include sections for instructions covering initial preparation for use and operational maintenance and overhaul.

REFERENCES

Required Publications

Required publications are sources that users must read in order to understand or to comply with this publication.

Army Regulations

AR 350-41	Training in Units. 19 March 1993
AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program. 31 October 2000
AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988
AR 385-40	Accident Reporting And Records. 1 November 1994
AR 530-1	Operations Security. 3 March 1995
AR 600-8-1	Army Casualty Operations/Assistance/Insurance. 20 October 1994

Army Training and Evaluation Program

ARTEP 3-116-MTP	Mission Training Plan for the Chemical Brigade or Battalion. 23 October 1990
ARTEP 3-207-10-MTP	Mission Training Plan for NBC Reconnaissance Platoon. 5 June 1997
ARTEP 3-457-30-MTP	Mission Training Plan for the Chemical Company (All). 13 October 1994

Department of Army Forms

DA FORM 1155	Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1156	Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966
DA FORM 1594	Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log. 1 November 1962
DA FORM 1971-6-R	Chemical/Biological Specimen Documentation (LRA) 1 October 1992
DA FORM 4137	Evidence/Property Custody Document. 1 July 1976

Department of Army Pamphlets

DA PAM 350-38	Standards in Weapon Training. 3 July 1997
DA PAM 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS). 1 August 1994

Department of Defense Publications

DD FORM 1911	Materiel Courier Receipt. 1 March 1982
DD FORM 2745	Enemy Prisoner of War (EPW) Capture Tag. 1 May 1996
DD FORM 2A (ACT)	Active Duty Military Identification Card. 1 July 1974
DOD REG 4500.9-R	Defense Transportation Regulation, Parts II & III. 1 April 1997

Field Manuals

FM 100-5	Operations. 14 June 1993
FM 101-5	Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997
FM 101-5-1	Operational Terms and Graphics. 30 September 1997
FM 12-6	Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994
FM 19-4	Military Police Battlefield Circulation Control, Area Security, Enemy Prisoner of War Operations. 7 May 1993
FM 20-3	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999
FM 21-10-1	Unit Field Sanitation Team. 11 October 1989
FM 21-11	First Aid for Soldiers. 27 October 1988
FM 21-75	Combat Skills Of The Soldier. 3 August 1984

FM 24-1	Signal Support in the Airland Battle. 15 October 1990
FM 24-18	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987
FM 24-19	Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991
FM 24-35	(O) Signal Operations Instructions "The SOI". 26 October 1990
FM 24-35-1	(O) Signal Supplemental Instructions. 2 October 1990
FM 25-100	Training the Force. 15 November 1988
FM 25-101	Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990
FM 27-10	The Law Of Land Warfare. 18 July 1956
FM 3-100	Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals. 8 May 1996
FM 3-101-1	Smoke Squad/Platoon Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 20 September 1994
FM 3-101-4	Biological Detection Platoon Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 9 June 1997
FM 3-101-6	Biological Defense Operations, Corps/Company Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 25 March 1999
FM 3-19	NBC Reconnaissance. 19 November 1993
FM 3-19.30	Physical Security. 8 January 2001
FM 3-19.40	Military Police Internment and Resettlement Operations. 1 August 2001
FM 3-3	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992
FM 3-4	NBC Protection. 29 May 1992
FM 34-1	Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 27 September 1994
FM 34-10	Division Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 25 November 1986
FM 34-130	Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield. 8 July 1994
FM 34-2	Collection Management and Synchronization Planning. 8 March 1994
FM 34-3	Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990
FM 34-60	Counterintelligence. 3 October 1995
FM 34-8	Combat Commander's Handbook on Intelligence. 28 September 1992
FM 34-80	Brigade and Battalion Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 15 April 1986
FM 3-5	NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000
FM 3-50	Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990
FM 4-30.3	Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 1 September 2000
FM 44-8	Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999
FM 44-80	Visual Aircraft Recognition. 30 September 1996
FM 55-30	Army Motor Transport Units And Operations. 27 June 1997
FM 55-65	Strategic Deployment. 3 October 1995
FM 55-9	Unit Air Movement Planning. 5 April 1993
FM 7-10	The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990
FM 71-1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 26 January 1998
FM 7-20	The Infantry Battalion. 6 April 1992
FM 7-7	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon And Squad (APC). 15 March 1985
FM 7-8	Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad. 22 April 1992
FM 8-10	Health Service Support in a Theater of Operations. 1 March 1991
FM 8-10-1	The Medical Company Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 29 December 1994
FM 8-10-6	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 14 April 2000

FM 8-10-7	Health Service Support in a Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Environment. 22 April 1993
FM 8-285	Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries. 22 December 1995
FM 8-42	Combat Health Support in Stability Operations and Support Operations. 27 October 1997
FM 8-55	Planning for Health Service Support. 9 September 1994
FM 9-43-2	Recovery and Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair. 3 October 1995

Other Product Types

TRADOC PAM 11-9	Blueprint of the Battlefield.

Soldier Training Publications

STP 21-1-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 1994
STP 21-24-SMCT	Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4. 1 October 1992
STP 21-II-MQS	Military Qualification Standards II Manual of Common Tasks for (Lieutenants and Captains). 31 January 1991
STP 21-I-MQS	Military Qualification Standards I Manual of Common Tasks (Precommissioning Requirements). 31 May 1990
STP 3-54B1-SM	Soldier's Manual, MOS 54B, Chemical Operations Specialist, Skill Level I. 16 June 1995
STP 3-54B2-SM	Soldier's Manual, Chemical Operations Specialist, MOS 54B Skill Level 2. 3 October 1995
STP 3-54B34-SM-TG	Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 54B, Chemical Operations Specialist. 26 January 1996
STP 3-CST (ST)	Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide (Special Text) for Civil-Support Team Tasks. To be published within six months.

Technical Manuals

TM 3-6665-349-12&P	Operator's and Unit Maintenance Manual Including Repair Parts and Special Tools List for Alarm, Biological Agents, Automatic: Integrated Detection System, M31 (NSN 6665-01-392-6191). 13 July 2001
TM 3-6665-350-12&P	Alarm, Biological Agent, Automatic: Integrated Detection System, M31A1
TM 3-6665-351-10	Detection System Biological Agent Long-Range-Biological Standoff Detection System (LR-BSDS), XM-94

Training Circulars

TC 12-16	PAC Noncommissioned Officer's Guide. 27 June 1991
TC 24-20	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988
TC 25-20	A Leader's Guide to After-Action Reviews. 30 September 1993
TC 25-6	Force-on-Force Collective Training using the Tactical Engagement Simulation Training System. 3 October 1995

Questionnaire

MTP NUMBER _____DATE_____

MTP TITLE_____

Request your recommendations to improve this training publication. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, a standard questionnaire has been provided. Please respond to all questions by circling your answer or providing a written response, where requested. Please make a copy of this questionnaire. Mail to: Commandant, US Army Maneuver Support Center, ATTN: ATZT-DT-WF-C, Fort Leonard Wood, MO 65473-6600.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU.

1. What is your position (for example, company commander, platoon sergeant [PSG])?

_____

2. How long have you served in this position?_____

3. How long have you served in this unit? _____

4. What is your component?

   a. Active Component
   b. Reserve Component

5. Where is your unit?

   a. Continental United States (CONUS)
   b. United States Army, Europe (USAREUR)
   c. United States Army, Western Command (WESTCOM)
   d. Eighth United States Army (USA)
   e. Other (specify)

_____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GENERAL.

6. How do you feel this document has affected training in your unit when compared to other training products?

   a. Has made training worse.
   b. Has made training better.
   c. Has had no affect on training.
   d. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

7. How easy is the document to use, compared to other training products?

   a. More difficult.
   b. Easier.
   c. About the same.
   d. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

For question numbers 8 through 11, choose one of the following answers:

a. Chapter 1, Unit Training.
b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes.
c. Chapter 3, Mission Outlines.
d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises.
e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines.
f. Chapter 6, External Evaluation.
g. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

8. What part of the MTP document was least useful? _____

9. What part of the MTP document was most useful? _____

10. What is the most difficult part of the MTP to understand?
_____

11. What is the easiest part of the MTP to understand?_____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES AND STXs.

12. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime mission. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?

a. They do not prepare the unit at all.
b. They help, but only provide 20 percent or less of my unit's training requirements.
c. They help, but only provide 21 to 50 percent of my unit's training requirements.
d. They help, but only provide between 51 to 80 percent of my unit's training requirements.
e. They provide 81 percent or more of my unit's training requirements.

13. Would you recommend that any STX be added or deleted from the MTP?_____

14. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

a. Have too many pages.
b. Are hard to read and understand.
c. Need more illustrations.
d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises.
e. Need more information on leader training.
f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises.
g. Need more information on support and resources.
h. Need more information on normally attached elements.
i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills.
j. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

15. What was the second greatest problem you experienced with the exercises?

    a. Have too many pages.
    b. Are hard to read and understand.
    c. Need more illustrations.
    d. Need more information on how to set up the exercises.
    e. Need more information on leader training.
    f. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises.
    g. Need more information on support and resources.
    h. Need more information on normally attached elements.
    i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as battle drills.
    j. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

16. How many STXs have you trained or participated in personally? _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS APPLY TO CHAPTERS 5 AND 6 OF THE MTP.

17. What changes would you make to Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines?

    a. Leave it out altogether.
    b. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises.
    c. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation.
    d. Make standards less detailed.
    e. Make standards more detailed.
    f. Have standards adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime.
    g. Do not change, chapter is fine.
    h. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

18. What changes would you make to Chapter 6, External Evaluation?

    a. Leave it out altogether.
    b. Clarify how to use this chapter with the training exercises.
    c. Clarify how to use this chapter with the external evaluation.
    d. Make standards less detailed.
    e. Make standards more detailed.
    f. Have standards adequately address those elements that are normally attached in wartime.
    g. Do not change, chapter is fine.
    h. Do not know or do not have an opinion.

19. Additional comments:

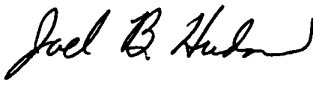
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

ARTEP 3-477-10-MTP
14 MARCH 2002

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

ERIC K. SHINSEKI
General, United States Army
Chief of Staff

Official:



JOEL B. HUDSON
Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0210314

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and US Army Reserve: Not to be distributed. Electronic Means Only.

PIN: 075277-000